

Vital Signs Monitoring Plan for the Klamath Network

Phase III Report (Draft)

Natural Resource Technical Report NPS/PWR/KLMN/NRTR—2007/XXX





ON THE COVER
Pictures of Klamath Network Parks
Photographs by: Laura Bridy

Vital Signs Monitoring Plan for the Klamath Network

Phase III Report (Draft)

Natural Resource Technical Report NPS/PWR/KLMN/NRTR—2007/XXX

Prepared by

Daniel A. Sarr¹, Dennis C. Odion², Sean Mohren¹, Laura Bridy¹, and Andrew Merton³

1. Klamath Network Inventory and Monitoring Program 1250 Siskiyou Blvd.

Ashland, Oregon 97520-5011

2. Southern Oregon University1250 Siskiyou Blvd.Ashland, Oregon 97520

3. University of Idaho

Colorado State University

Fort Collins, Colorado 80523-1877

With Contributions from

Andrew Duff, Eli Sarnat, and Sean B. Smith, Southern Oregon University
Erik Beever, Great Lakes Inventory and Monitoring Program - National Park Service
Sarah Shafer U.S. Geological Survey, Denver
Robert E. Truitt, Mojave Network - National Park Service
Windy Bunn, Whiskeytown National Recreation Area
Judy Rocchio, Air Resources Division – National Park Service
Robert L. Hoffman, U.S.G.S. Forest and Rangeland Ecosystems Science Center
Christopher R. Currens and Mary Ann Madej, U.S.G.S. Western Ecological Research Center

December 2006

U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service Klamath Network Inventory and Monitoring Program Ashland, Oregon The Natural Resource Publication series addresses natural resource topics that are of interest and applicability to a broad readership in the National Park Service and to others in the management of natural resources, including the scientific community, the public, and the NPS conservation and environmental constituencies. Manuscripts are peer-reviewed to ensure that the information is scientifically credible, technically accurate, appropriately written for the intended audience, and is designed and published in a professional manner.

The Natural Resource Technical Report series is used to disseminate the peer-reviewed results of scientific studies in the physical, biological, and social sciences for both the advancement of science and the achievement of the National Park Service's mission. The reports provide contributors with a forum for displaying comprehensive data that are often deleted from journals because of page limitations. Current examples of such reports include the results of research that addresses natural resource management issues; natural resource inventory and monitoring activities; resource assessment reports; scientific literature reviews; and peer reviewed proceedings of technical workshops, conferences, or symposia.

Views and conclusions in this report are those of the authors and do not necessarily reflect policies of the National Park Service. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use by the National Park Service.

Printed copies of reports in these series may be produced in a limited quantity and they are only available as long as the supply lasts. This report is also available from the Klamath I&M Network website (http://www1.nature.nps.gov/im/units/klmn) on the internet, or by sending a request to the address on the back cover.

Please cite this publication as: [DRAFT REPORT,PLEASE DON'T!!]

Sarr, D. A., D. C. Odion, S. Mohren, L. Bridy, and A. Merton et al. 2006. Vital Signs Monitoring Plan for the Klamath Network Natural Resource Technical Report NPS/PWR/KLMN/NRTR—2007/001. National Park Service, Ashland, Oregon.

NPS D-XXX, Month Year

Contents

Contents	v
List of Figures	viii
List of Tables	ix
Acknowledgements	x i
Executive Summary	Viii Ix Ix Ix Ix Ix Ix Ix
Chapter 1: Introduction and Background	1
1.1 The Klamath Network Parks A. Crater Lake National Park B. Lassen Volcanic National Park C. Lava Beds National Monument D. Oregon Caves National Monument	1 6 8
F. Whiskeytown National Recreation Area	
1.2 The Need for Long-term Monitoring of Park Lands	16
1.3 Strategic Goals for Performance Management (GPRA Goals)	
1.4 Formation of the Network and Approach to Planning A. General Approach to Vital Signs Monitoring B. Organizational Structure and Function of the Network C. Goals for Vital Signs Monitoring D. Vital Signs Scoping Process	20 20 21
1.5 Biophysical Overview of The Klamath Network A. Environmental History: The "Central Significance" of the Klamath Region B. Abiotic Processes C. Biotic Processes D. Major Ecosystem Types E. Species of Special Concern: Rare, Endangered, and Sensitive Species F. Dynamic Processes	23 24 30 31
1.6 Human Effects on Park Ecosystems A. Historical Human Effects in the Klamath Network Parks B. Ecosystem Threats in the Klamath Network	48
Monitoring in the Klamath Network A. Past and Present Monitoring B. Identification of Monitoring Concerns and Vital Signs	54
Chapter 2: Conceptual Ecological Models	62
2.1 Introduction	
2.2 A Conceptual Basis for Monitoring in the Klamath Network	
B. Multiscale and Multispecies Integration	
2.3 Conceptual Model Development	64

2.4 Conceptual Models	65
A. A Holistic Conceptual Model of Influences on Klamath Park Ecosystems	
B. Assumptions and Approach to Submodels	
C. Major Ecosystem Domains of the Klamath Network D. Human Influences on Park Ecosystems	
•	
Chapter 3: Vital Signs	81
3.1 Introduction	81
3.2 Prioritization of Vital Signs	81
3.2.1 Vital Signs Ranking, Step 1	
3.2.2 Vital Signs Ranking, Step 2	
3.2.3 The Top Ten Network Vital Signs	
3.2.4 Justification for Vital Signs Selected and Linkage to Conceptual Models 3.2.5 Unfunded Vital Signs	
Chapter 4: Sampling Design	
4.1 Introduction	
4.2 Monitoring, Sampling Concepts, and Definitions	
4.2.1 Membership Design	
4.2.2 Visitation Design	
4.3 Overview of Sampling Designs	
4.3.1 Grid-based Sampling	
4.3.3 Reference Sites	
4.3.4 Census Data	
4.4 Visitation Schedule	100
Chapter 5: Sampling Protocols	103
Chapter 6: Data Management	
6.1 Introduction	
6.2 Data Management Plan	
6.3 Types of Data and Information	110
6.4 Infrastructure	
6.4.1 National I&M Program	
6.4.2 Host Park Support	
6.5 Roles and Responsibilities	
6.5.1 Data Manager	
6.5.2 Project Manager	
6.6 Data Management Process and Workflow	114
6.6.1 Planning	
6.6.2 Implementation	116
6.6.3 Maintenance	
6.6.4 Access	
6.6.6 Storage and Archiving	

6.6.7 Quality Assurance and Quality Control	117
6.7 Water Quality Data	118
6.8 Summary	118
Chapter 7: Data Analysis and Reporting	121
7.1 Overview	
7.2 Data Analysis	121
7.2.1 Forms of Data and Assessment	121
7.2.2 Determination of Status and Trends in Park Vital Signs	121
7.2.3 Detection of Abnormalities	
7.2.4 Evaluation of System Dynamics	
7.3 Reporting	
7.3.2 Analysis and Synthesis Reports	
7.3.3 Protocol Reviews	
7.3.4 Program Reviews	
7.3.5 Scientific Journal Articles and Book Chapters	
Chapter 8: Administration/Implementation of the Monitoring Program	
8.1 Overview	
8.2 Administration	
8.2.2 Staffing Plan	
8.2.3 Administrative Structure	
8.3 Operations	
8.3.1 Pre-Field Preparations	
8.3.2 Field Sampling	
8.3.4 Field equipment	
8.3.5 Laboratory Analysis	133
8.4 Integration and Partnerships	134
8.5 Periodic Program Review	134
Chapter 9: Schedule	135
9.1 Overview	
9.2 Implementation and Sampling Schedules	135
Chapter 10: Budget	
10.1 Budget Overview	
10.2 Implementing the Vital Signs Program	
10.3 Program Development	
Chapter 11: Literature Cited	
List of Appendices	
EIV. VI / \PYVIIMIVVV	

List of Figures

Figure 1.1. National Park units of the Klamath Network of southern Oregon and	_
northern California	3
Figure 1.2. This diagram illustrates major floristic provinces influencing the Klamath Region of northern California and southern Oregon and the location of major air mass boundaries outlined by Mitchell (1976).	24
Figure 1.3. Climate diagrams of selected stations in the Klamath Network parks.	47
All parks in the Network show a Mediterranean-type climate regime, with	
precipitation and temperature regimes perfectly out-of-phase. Summer drought is	
a defining feature, but is mitigated in parks with coastal fogs (Redwood) or late-	
lying snowpacks (Crater Lake and Lassen). Note the decrease in precipitation	
and increase in annual temperature variation (continentality) from the	
westernmost to easternmost parks	29
Figure 2.1. Conceptual model illustrating multi-scale hierarchy of biodiversity	
indicators that describe composition, structure, and function at each level of scale	00
and biological organization (from Noss 1990).	63
Figure 2.2. A Holistic Conceptual Model of influences on Klamath park	66
ecosystems	66
abiotic gradients and ecological zonation (changes in abiotic conditions with	
increasing depth are portrayed in vertical line graphs), b.) major dynamic	
processes	69
Figure 2.4 a, b. Conceptual model of freshwater ecosystems, showing a.) major	03
abiotic gradients and ecological zonation in lake (lentic) ecosystems, b.) major	
abiotic gradients in flowing freshwater (lotic) ecosystems showing changes in the	
channel gradient, dissolved oxygen, and water temperature down the stream.	
The river continuum refers to the abiotic and biotic changes from headwaters to	
larger streams (Vannote et al. 1980)	70
Figure 2.5 a, b. Conceptual model of major dynamic processes in freshwater	
ecosystems: a.) lake (lentic) ecosystems, b.) flowing freshwater (lotic)	
ecosystems	71
Figure 2.7 a, b. Conceptual models of subterranean ecosystems, showing: a.)	
major abiotic gradients and zonation (variation in conditions is portrayed in	
horizontal line graphs). b.) major system dynamics	74
Figure 2.8. Human influences on the structure, function, and composition of park	
ecosystems.	
Figure 2.9. Conceptual model of human influences on marine ecosystems	77
Figure 2.10a, b. Conceptual model of human influences on freshwater	
ecosystems: a.) lake (lentic) ecosystems, b.) flowing water (lotic) ecosystems	
Figure 2.11. Human influences on terrestrial ecosystems.	
Figure 2.12. Human influences on subterranean ecosystems	80
Figure 3.1. Conceptual model showing 4 major ecosystems and the top ten vital	
signs. Spheres in which vital signs are located indicate which ecosystems would	
be monitored, and illustrate generally how thorough monitoring would be in each of the major ecosystem types	05
of the major coogratem types	🥶

ratural resources databases	111
Figure 6.2. Diagram of the data life cycle, illustrating the major data	
management activities during the life of a project.	115
Figure 6.3. Simplified model of the Natural Resource Challenge vital signs water	
quality data flow.	118
Figure 8.1. Staffing structure for the Klamath Network at full program	
implementation (FY 2009 and onward).	131
Figure 10.1. Annual project budgets for each of the top ten vital signs, fixed costs (i.e., core staff, program administration, outreach), and miscellaneous and	
contingency expenses for FY 2008-2012. Vital sign ranks are given in the legend.	
Integrated vital signs are presented together with the ranks of both vital signs	
included	142
List of Tables	
Table 0.1. Top ten vital signs for the Klamath Network	xiii
Table 1.1. National Park Service units in the Klamath Network and their size and	
elevations above sea level.	2
Table 1.2. GPRA goals specific to KLMN parks and relevant to the long-term	
network monitoring plan.	18
Table 1.3. Status of 12 Basic Inventories for Klamath Network Parks, December,	10
Table 1.4. Dominant freshwater ecosystems of Klamath Network parks.	19
Abundance codes are: $A = abundant$, $C = common$, and $U = uncommon$, $P = uncommon$	
but prominent, ? = unknown, - = not present	36
Table 1.5. Listed impaired (303(d)) water bodies of the Klamath Network	
Table 1.6 . Dominant zonal terrestrial vegetation types of Klamath Network parks.	
Abundance codes are: A = abundant, C = common, U = uncommon, and ? =	
unknown	39
Table 1.7. Most commonly identified monitoring questions or topics and their	
associated vital signs in the Klamath Network vital signs identification process	58
Table 3.1 . Affiliations and expertise of the 44 respondents to the questionnaire	00
sent out to rate monitoring questions and associated vital signs	
Table 3.3. Klamath Network top ten vital signs and the portions of the National	04
Park Service Ecological Monitoring Framework in which they occur. Each vital	
sign is presented with its ranking score and with associated monitoring questions	
that would be directly or indirectly addressed. These questions are numbered	
according to their rank. The main question is listed first. Other questions that	
would be addressed indirectly are then listed. These may not directly pertain to	
the national framework categories. National framework categories that contain no	
vital signs are not shown. Also shown are affected ecosystems (T = terrestrial, S	
= subterranean, F = freshwater aquatic, M=marine).	91
Table 4.1. Spatial and temporal sampling designs for each vital sign in the	104
Klamath Network	101

Table 5.1. Vital signs, the parks in which they will be monitored, and the specific	
monitoring objectives	104
Table 6.1. Data categories with examples of potential deliverables	110
Table 6.2. Roles and responsibilities of personnel working on a project funded or	
developed by the Klamath Network	113
Table 9.1. Major tasks required for implementation of the vital signs protocols for the Klamath Network I&M Program. The leftmost column lists the year that protocol development begins and the rightmost column lists the target	
implementation year	136
Table 9.2. Annual frequency and timing of sampling for the ten vital signs the	137
Table 10.1. Annual budget for the Klamath Network I&M Program with income	
and major expenses, 2008-2012. All values are in \$1000s	140

Acknowledgements

This report is the result of a cumulative effort over several years, based upon over three years of research and many more years conducting on the ground work in the network parks. Numerous people contributed to its successful completion.

First, we thank the Klamath Network Park Superintendents Steve Chaney (and predecessors Bill Pierce and Andy Ringgold), Mary Martin (and predecessor Marilyn Parris), Craig Dorman, Craig Ackerman, Jim Milestone, and Chuck Lundy, for their support and guidance through the planning process. We applaed their enthusiasm to make our network a tight-knit and collaborative team.

Next, we thank the Klamath Network Technical Advisory Committee (John Roth, Mac Brock, Barbara Alberti, Louise Johnson, David Larson, and Terry Hofstra) for providing leadership to the program since its inception. We thank the additional members of the Science Advisory Committee (Leonel Arguello, Stassia Samuels, Deana DeWire, Mary Ann Madej, Chris Currens, Michael Murray, Jennifer Gibson, Jon Arnold, Brian Rasmussen, Nancy Nordensten, and Bruce Bury) and other natural resource staff throughout the network for participation in scoping meetings and helping with many information requests this report required.

We are indebted to the network staff who contributed to our Inventory Study Plan in 2001, which provided a body of work to review, update, and build upon (Bow O'Barr, Arnie Peterson, Sarah Koenig, Kelly Fuhrmann, Stassia Samuels, and Dave Best).

Participants in the network scoping workshops (too many to list here) added tremendously to our knowledge of park ecosystems. We greatly appreciate it. Howard Sakai, in particular, did a fine job organizing the Marine Scoping workshop for Redwood National and State Parks and writing up a summary report. Marcia Pinneau and Elizabeth Perry provided much appreciated copy editing of the draft reports.

Penny Latham, John Gross, and Steve Fancy, and many others at the Regional and National Level Inventory and Monitoring Program Offices provided guidance throughout the process that not only lowered anxiety, but also no doubt improved this report greatly. Sarah Allen of Point Reyes National Seashore, Mark Miller of the U.S. Geological Survey, and Frank Lang of Southern Oregon University (emeritus) did an outstanding job reviewing the Phase I and II Reports, and their suggestions strengthened this report. Kirk Steinhorst of University of Idaho was invaluable in helping us with statistical needs.

Executive Summary

The National Park Service (NPS) needs current, quantitative information about the status of park ecosystems, their intrinsic variability, and potential threats to fulfill its mandate to preserve park natural resources "unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations." Accordingly, NPS implemented a program known as "vital signs monitoring." It will develop monitoring programs that report scientifically sound information on the status and long-term trends of park ecosystems to managers, policy makers, and the interested public.

Two hundred seventy National Parks nationwide have been grouped into 32 Vital Signs Networks linked by geographic similarities, common natural resources, and resource protection challenges to implement the vital signs monitoring process. Networks facilitate collaboration, information sharing, and economies of scale in natural resource monitoring. This report describes the design of the monitoring program to be conducted by the Klamath Network.

The Klamath Network (also referred to as "the Network" or "KLMN") encompasses six units managed by the National Park Service in northern California and southern Oregon: Crater Lake National Park, Lassen Volcanic National Park, Lava Beds National Monument, Oregon Caves National Monument, Redwood National and State Parks, and Whiskeytown National Recreation Area. Collectively, the six park units comprise nearly 200,000 hectares and range considerably in size (196 to 73,775 hectares) and relief. The ecosystems of the Klamath Network are maintained by a complex biophysical environment composed of abiotic processes (climate, geology, and ocean), biotic processes (competition and predation), and temporal dynamics (disturbances) that span multiple spatial and temporal scales. Humans are both a part of this biophysical system and a source of major threats to it.

The broad goals of the NPS and KLMN vital signs monitoring program are:

- 1. To determine status and trends in selected indicators of the condition of park ecosystems to allow managers to make better-informed decisions;
- 2. To provide early warning of abnormal conditions and impairment of selected resources to help develop effective mitigation measures and reduce costs of management;
- 3. To provide data to foster better understanding of the dynamic nature and condition of park ecosystems and to provide reference points for comparisons with other, altered environments:
- 4. To provide data to meet legal and Congressional mandates related to natural resource protection and visitor enjoyment; and
- 5. To provide a means of measuring progress towards performance goals.

To achieve these goals, the Klamath Network began species inventories in 2000. The Network is currently in the final year of its efforts to certify species lists for vascular plants and vertebrates, and to update natural resource bibliographic and metadata information systems. The Network began the three-phase process for developing a vital signs monitoring program in 2003. This report describes the final phase in the development of a long-term monitoring plan, including descriptions of the biophysical environment of the Klamath parks, monitoring goals, relevant threats and monitoring issues, vital signs selection and prioritization strategies, prioritized vital signs, sampling designs, data management, budget, staffing and other key aspects of the program. The specific monitoring is guided by detailed stand-alone protocols and the Standard

Operating Procedures contained within them. In Phase I, the Klamath Network compiled extensive information about park environments, processes, threats, and management concerns. This research was used to develop conceptual models to illustrate the biophysical character, dynamic nature, and human influences on park ecosystems in the Klamath Network parks. From this empirical and conceptual foundation, the Network and partners developed a list of 33 monitoring questions and over 170 candidate vital signs.

In Phase II of the development of its Vital Signs Monitoring Plan, the Klamath Network selected vital signs with the highest priority for monitoring. This process required a broad multi-taxa, multi-ecosystem perspective and careful scientific review. The Network used two steps to prioritize vitals signs: 1) an extensive review with outside scientists in the region, 2) a final internal review by network natural resources staff. The top ten vital signs for the Klamath Network resulting from the two-step process are shown below:

Table 0.1. Top ten vital signs for the Klamath Network.

Vital Sign	Measurable Attribute		
Non-native species	Distribution and abundance of select invasive, non-		
Non-native species	native plants, animals, and diseases.		
Keystone and sensitive plants & animals	Trends in populations of amphibians, whitebark pine, aspen, and other keystone and sensitive plants and animals (to be determined, including rare species).		
Terrestrial vegetation	Structure, composition, and population trends. Focal types include old growth forest, riparian forests, ponderosa pine forest, early successional vegetation, and, special botanical areas (Little Bald Hills, <i>Puccinellia</i> springs).		
Bird communities	Bird community composition and structure.		
Intertidal communities	Intertidal community (e.g. invertebrates and algae) structure and composition.		
Freshwater aquatic communities	Composition and structure of freshwater communities (e.g. macroinvertebrates (including mussels) and freshwater vegetation.		
Cave collapse / entrance communities	Composition and structure of cave entrance communities.		
Water quality (aquatic, marine and subterranean)	Water temperature, chemistry, flow, and pollutant loads.		
Land cover, use, pattern (roads)	Changes in land cover and use in and around parks. Road density and use patterns.		
Environmental conditions in caves	Temperature, air flow, and ice levels.		

Starting in FY 2006, the Klamath Network began Phase III of the vital signs process. In this phase, the Network developed a complete Vital Signs Monitoring Plan that included a preliminary budget, staffing and scheduling plans, guidance for field sampling, data analysis, and reporting, a Data Management Plan, and a Water Quality Monitoring Plan. The Network also produced protocol development summaries for each selected vital sign describing budgets and schedules for the protocols, databases, and Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs). The Network plans to have protocols peer-reviewed and finalized in 2007-2008, and to begin implementing protocols in 2008-2009.

Chapter 1: Introduction and Background

The National Park Service (NPS) is charged with preserving some of the nation's most magnificent and beloved lands. Early National Park Service administrators often assumed that the exclusion of logging, grazing, and mining would ensure that, in the words of Horace Albright, second director of the NPS, parks would persist in "everlasting wildness." As early as the 1930's, however, occasional scientific studies showed that declines in native species (especially predators); introductions of exotic plants and animals; and impacts from visitors, roads, parking lots, etc. were occurring in seemingly pristine areas. Despite anecdotal or sporadic assessments of threats to park ecosystems, a consistent scientific program for monitoring and conserving park resources did not exist for many years. The Natural Resource Challenge, initiated in 1999, is a major initiative to bring scientific knowledge to the parks and the public to ensure that park managers have the best possible science at hand. As the flagship program of the Natural Resource Challenge, the Inventory and Monitoring Program will provide critical information to guide this process. This document lays out the initial goals, objectives, and relevant information for the design of a long-term monitoring program for the Klamath Network parks.

Natural resource monitoring is "the collection and analysis of repeated observations or measurements to evaluate changes in condition and progress toward meeting a management objective" (Elzinga et al. 1998, Oakley et al. 2003). This report describes the initial phase of research in preparation of a multi-park monitoring plan for the Klamath Network. The purposes of this chapter are to describe 1) the Klamath Network parks and their resources and the environmental setting in which they lie; 2) the need for monitoring for changes in resources and supporting environments; and 3) the key information gaps that limit understanding of how to best achieve these monitoring goals. This information is used to develop the conceptual foundation for identifying vital signs to implement monitoring in the Network (Chapter 2).

1.1 The Klamath Network Parks

The Klamath Network encompasses six units managed by the National Park Service in northern California and southern Oregon (Table 1.1, Figure 1.1). The USDA Forest Service and USDI Bureau of Land Management have jurisdiction over most lands bordering park units. In addition, the Bureau of Land Management has authority over the newly created Cascade-Siskiyou National Monument, which falls within the area bounded by the Klamath Network. There are also a number of other agencies and non-profit groups managing and protecting lands within the Klamath region, such as the California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG), and The Nature Conservancy (TNC). To efficiently use all resources available to the Klamath Network Inventory and Management program, interagency collaboration will be essential. This will enable the network to compare trends in diversity and abundance not only within NPS management units, but in surrounding units managed by other state and federal agencies, giving us information that may be indicative of regional ecosystem trends that are important in facilitating ecosystem management.

Collectively, the six existing park units comprise nearly 200,000 hectares with a considerable range in size (196 to 73,775 hectares [484 to 182,298 acres]) and relief (485 to 1602 meters)

(Table 1.1). The six parks of the Klamath Network span a region of complex topography that can be split from north to south into two geologically distinct subregions, the Klamath-Siskiyou and the Cascades-Modoc subregions (Figure 1.1). The Klamath-Coastal subregion extends eastward from approximately 0.5 km (0.25 mi) offshore in the Pacific Ocean to the edge of the Cascades foothills. The Cascades-Modoc subregion continues eastward into the Great Basin. The parks also vary considerably in the elevations they span (Table 1.1). Nonetheless, there are resource management concerns common to all, including altered fire regimes, both non-native and rare species, impacts from adjacent land practices, and visitor use. There are also park-specific management concerns. Appendix A addresses the specific management concerns of the individual park units, along with a detailed description of the climate, geology, biological, and other resources of each. Appendix D described fire regimes and how they have been impacted, and Appendix E describes the threatened and rare species in the parks, while Appendix C describes vegetation. Here, we provide a brief summary for each park that outlines the park purpose and history, biophysical setting, and major natural resource concerns.

Table 1.1. National Park Service units in the Klamath Network and their size and elevations above sea level.

Park Unit	Size (ha/acres)	Elevations
		(m)
Crater Lake National Park	73,775/182,298	1219-2720
Lassen Volcanic National Park	43,047/106,369	1585-3187
Lava Beds National Monument	18,898/46,697	1200-1685
Oregon Caves National Monument	196/484	1122-1670
Redwood National Park	42,700/105,469	0-996*
Whiskeytown National Recreation Area	17,614/43,524	244-1893

^{*}The subtidal zone at Redwood National Park extends 0.5 km (0.25 miles) offshore to an unknown depth below mean sea level. The area of marine habitat in the 56 km (35 mile) coastal section of the park is about 2240 ha (5533 acres).

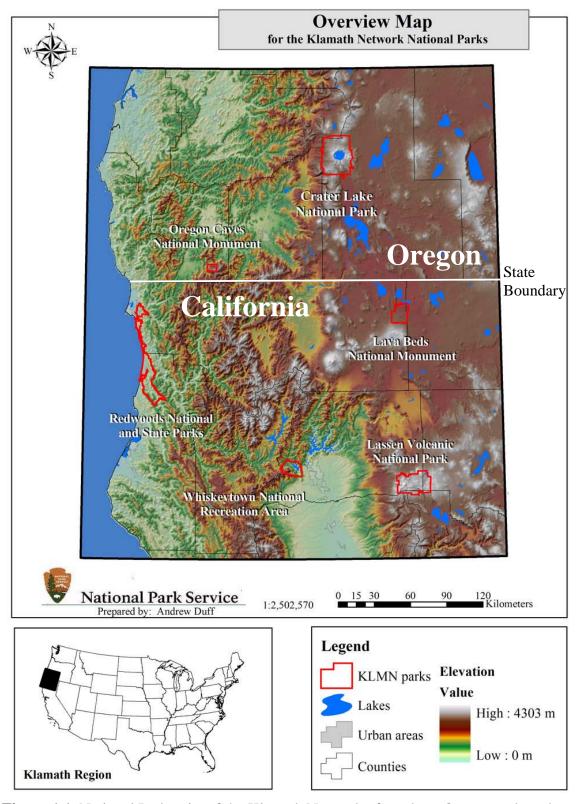
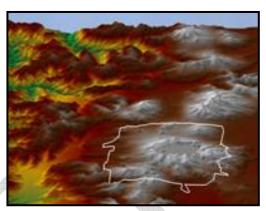


Figure 1.1. National Park units of the Klamath Network of southern Oregon and northern California.

A. Crater Lake National Park

Park Purpose and History

Crater Lake National Park was established by President Theodore Roosevelt on May 22, 1902 (32 Stat. 202) as "an area of two hundred and forty-nine square miles...dedicated and set apart forever as a public (park) or pleasure ground for the benefit of the people of the United States, to be known as Crater Lake National Park." The act further states that adequate measures shall be taken for "the preservation of the natural objects...the protection of the timber...the preservation of all kinds of game and fish" and "that said reservation shall be open...to all...scientists, excursionists, and pleasure seekers."



Oblique relief map of Crater Lake National Park showing the Mt. Mazama Crater.

Biophysical Setting

Crater Lake National Park straddles the divide of the Cascade Mountains (Figure 1.1) with elevations running between 1,219 meters (4,000 feet) and 2,720 meters (8,926 feet). Crater Lake caldera formed by collapse during the eruption of approximately 50 cubic kilometers of magma about 7,000 years ago. The 8x10 kilometer caldera lies in the remains of Mount Mazama, a Pleistocene stratovolcano cluster covering 400 square kilometers in the southern Oregon Cascades. Prior to its climactic eruption, Mount Mazama's summit had an elevation between 3,300 and 3,700 m (10,800 - 12,000 feet). Its southern and southeastern flanks were deeply incised by glacial valleys, now evidenced by U-shaped notches in the caldera wall.

Incomparable Crater Lake occupies the majestic caldera of the former Mount Mazama and is the deepest, clearest lake in the United States. Scientists have also found that the air at Crater Lake National Park is among the cleanest in the United States, making it a Class I airshed. The park has a cool, mesic, but varied climate, and protects outstanding examples of montane and subalpine coniferous forests, high montane meadows and wetland ecosystems, and pumice flats. A flora of the park was recently completed (Zika 2003).

Natural Resource Concerns

Maintenance of the pristine air and waters of Crater Lake National Park is a primary park concern. Sources of anthropogenic impacts to air and water quality include near field influences such as local traffic and boats, and far field influences such as agricultural and forestry slash burning, human-ignited prescribed and wildland fires, and air-borne pollutants from distant urban and industry areas. The most significant disturbance to

geologic features in the park has been road construction, which has resulted in a number of scars to the park landscape. The Pumice Desert is a unique landform that is continually threatened by illegal off-road vehicle impacts that result in unsightly tracks, impacts to sparse vegetation and, possibly, changes in vegetative succession. Illegal matsutake mushroom harvesting has been known to occur.

Fire suppression and historic logging activities have altered forest structure and species composition throughout portions of the park and left behind other legacies such as former logging roads. The Forest Service manages surrounding areas, where logging activities continue resulting in changes in the adjacent landscape. In particular, the area adjacent to the southeast portion of the park has been extensively clear-cut. Park managers are concerned about the effects of these changes on plant and animal communities.

Increased harvest and consumptive and recreational use as well as differences in agency policies (e.g., fire management) on the surrounding national forests have led to dramatic changes to Crater Lake's viewsheds, with possibly important effects on terrestrial ecosystem function.

Non-native species: A major management concern is the impact of the non-native pathogen white pine blister rust caused by a fungus (Cronartium ribicola) on five-needle pines. The pine species it infects include: western white pine (*Pinus monticola*), sugar pine (*P. lambertiana*), and whitebark pine (*P. albicaulis*), all of which are highly susceptible. As described by Murray (2004), there is considerable concern about the loss of whitebark pine. In the Cascade Range, whitebark pine often forms pure stands at timberline, at higher elevations than other trees can tolerate. It extends above timberline in dwarfed (Krummholtz) form. Thus, the pine forms a forested ecosystem where otherwise only meadow or sparsely vegetated slopes would exist at Crater Lake National Park. Blister rust was formally detected on the whitebark pines at Crater Lake in 2000. Based on conservative estimates, infection ranges from zero on the east side to 20% on the west side of Crater Lake's caldera. There are many long-since-dead whitebark pines on the west side of the caldera, indicating that the disease has been present for some time prior to formal detection. Park staff estimate that up to 26% of the park's westside whitebark pines have been killed by the disease or the interrelated mountain pine beetle outbreak. At current rates, about half of the westside pines will be gone by 2050.

Non-native plants also potentially threaten natural communities at Crater Lake. Common mullein (*Verbascum thapsus*), bull thistle (*Cirsium vulgare*), and yellow star thistle (*Centaurea solstitialis*) are presently established, and spotted knapweed (*Centaurea maculosa*) is expected to become a problem. A recent inventory of the non-native plants in the park (Appendix I) found that they were directly linked to roadside disturbance.

Non-native animals include fish and birds. Crater Lake originally contained no fish, but was stocked early in the 1900's. Fish planting ended in 1941, and today Rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) and Kokanee salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) exist in the lake. Brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) have been planted in Sun Creek, a Klamath River

tributary. The Brown-headed Cowbird (*Molothrus ater*) has been found in the park, and the Barred Owl (*Strix varia*) is very likely present.

Rare species: Bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in the Klamath River Basin were listed as "threatened" under the Endangered Species Act by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service in June 1998 and the park has made great efforts to restore and maintain a healthy population of the species in Sun Creek. Two other species are listed and threatened, the Bald Eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*) and the Northern Spotted Owl (*Strix occidentalis*). Also, there are a host of plants and animals which are not federally protected that are of concern due to relative rarity including mammals such as the fisher (*Martes pennnanti*) and marten (*Martes americana*) (Appendix E).

B. Lassen Volcanic National Park

Park Purpose and History

Lassen Volcanic National Park was established by an Act of Congress on August 9, 1916 "for recreation purposes by the public and for the preservation from injury or spoliation of all timber, mineral deposits and natural curiosities or wonders within said park and their retention in their natural condition...and provide against the wanton destruction of the fish and game found within said park and against their capture or destruction...." Incorporated into the park were Cinder Cone and Lassen Peak National Monuments, which were established by Presidential Proclamations (No. 753 and 754) on May 6, 1907 as part of the Lassen Peak Forest Reserve (established on June 5, 1905 by



Lassen Peak from Kings Creek Meadow, Lassen volcanic National Park

Presidential Proclamation). In 1972, Congress designated 75 percent of the park (31,964 ha, 78,983 acres) as the Lassen Volcanic Wilderness.

Biophysical Setting

Lassen Volcanic National Park is in the Cascades near the junction with the Sierra Nevada Range with the Great Basin immediately to the east (Figure 1.1). Several types of extinct and dormant volcanoes dominate the landscape alongside active thermal features, such as steam vents and mud pots. Lassen Peak erupted over a six-year period between 1914 and 1921. The most recent volcanic eruption within the continental United States, prior to the Mount Saint Helens eruption in May 1980, is preserved within the park. Lassen Peak is one of the largest plug dome volcanoes in the world. The complex landscape of the park ranges in elevation from 1,585 meters (5,200 feet) in the southeast

near Warner Valley to 3,187 meters (10,457 feet) at the summit of Lassen Peak, comprising mid-elevation and subalpine conifer forests, undulating meadowlands, and glaciated alpine terrain. Numerous streams and lakes occur within the park.

Natural Resource Concerns

Air and water pollution are key management concerns. Lassen Volcanic National Park is a Class I airshed. This designation requires that Federal land managers safeguard air quality from significant deterioration in order to protect air quality-related values. The vitality, significance, and integrity of many park resources are dependent on good air quality. The lack of baseline information about aquatic ecosystems also hinders understanding of human impacts, and is a key management concern in the park. Several areas of substantial land disturbance exist in the park. These include the now-closed downhill ski area near the Southwest Entrance; the Manzanita Lake developed area, where facilities were removed in the early 1970's because of rock avalanche hazard; several borrow pits along the main park road; Drakesbad Meadow, a unique fen that was ditched and drained prior to park establishment; and an earthen dam at Dream Lake. These disturbed areas are a visual blight, fragment wildlife habitat, disrupt natural water flows, and provide opportunities for the establishment of non-native plants.

Along the park boundaries, trespass by domestic livestock, snowmobiles, and off-highway vehicles is known or suspected to occur, along with periodic poaching of wildlife within the park (the actual extent of poaching is unknown, but it is thought to be an annual occurrence). The US Forest Service manages surrounding lands where logging affects habitat quality for forest dependent species, including rare avian and mammal species that may use the park, such as the Northern Goshawk (*Accipiter gentiles*), California Spotted Owl (*Strix occidentalis*), fisher (*Martes pennnanti*), and marten (*Martes americana*).

Non-native species: Non-native invasive plant species have the potential to overwhelm native ecosystems of Lassen (Appendix I). Approximately 53 exotic plant species occur in the park or immediately adjacent to it, yet only a small portion of the park has been surveyed for introduced plants. Bull thistle (*Cirsium vulgare*), yellow star thistle (*Centaurea solstitialis*), knapweeds (*Centaurea maculosa, C. squarrosa*) and Scotch broom (*Cytisus scoparius*) are the biggest concerns. In terms of non-native pathogens, symptoms and indicators of blister rust have recently been confirmed as incidences of the disease by the US Forest Service's monitoring. A recent publication (Meentemeyer et al. 2004) concluded that the northern Sierra, southern Cascades is at high risk for Sudden Oak Death (*Phytophthora ramorum*), but this is mainly at elevations below the level of the park.

At least 6 non-native animals occur within the park. These include three fish species: eastern brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*), brown trout (*Salmo trutto*), and golden shiner (*Notemigonus crysoleucas*), as well as the European Starling (*Sturnus vulgaris*), the Brown-Headed Cowbird (*Molothrus ater*), and the bullfrog (*Rana catesbiana*). It is likely

that other non-native animal species exist, such as Barred Owls, and their impacts are presently unknown.

Rare species: There are no federally listed plant species within the park. However, there are at least twenty-three special status plant species found within the park according to the California Native Plant Society (Appendix E). Almost all of Lassen's special status plants are found in the high elevation subalpine zone. A number of species in the park merit special state and/or federal status due to population and habitat declines throughout their range (Appendix E). For example, Cascades frog (Rana cascadae), which was until the mid-1970s considered abundant throughout the park, has been reduced to one very small relict population that does not appear to be reproducing. The Bald Eagle is the sole animal on the Federal List of Threatened and Endangered Species to occur within the park. A single pair of Bald Eagle nests near Snag Lake, apparently alternating with other nest sites inside or outside the park. Hunting territory for this pair comprises most of the eastern half of the park. Three bird species in the park are currently being considered for federal listing. These are: Willow Flycatcher (Empidonax traillii), of the western subspecies group, Northern Goshawk (Accipiter gentiles), and California Spotted Owl (Strix occidentalis). Recent studies by the Point Reyes Bird Observatory found that a 2.5 km² montane meadow in Warner Valley on the park's south boundary contained one of the state's most significant breeding populations of Willow Flycatcher (King et al. 1998). Northern Goshawk and California Spotted owl have also been shown to depend on Park habitat, but the full extent is not known (Blakesley and Noon 1999, Richter 1998). Two species are on the California Endangered Species List that occur or have occurred within the park are the Willow Flycatcher and the Great Grey Owl (Strix nebulosa). The only confirmed sighting of Great Grey Owl occurred near the Bumpass Hell Trail in 1956. Mountain bighorn sheep (Ovis canadensis) were previously extirpated. A bighorn reintroduction program was attempted in this area in the 1970's but failed due to a disease outbreak. Other rare mammals believed to be in the park include the fisher (Martes pennanti) and marten (Martes americana).

C. Lava Beds National Monument

Park Purpose and History

Lava Beds National Monument was established by presidential proclamation No. 1755 on November 21, 1925 (44 Stat. 2591). This proclamation recognized the significance of the area's cultural and natural resources: "Whereas, lands of the United States within the area herein described...contain objects of such historic and scientific interest as to justify their reservation and protection as a National Monument...." Lava Beds National Monument is rich in both natural and cultural resources. Monument lands were home to the Modoc Indians and their ancestors for thousands of years, and were the scene of the Modoc War, which took place during 1872 and 1873.

Biophysical Setting

Lava Beds National Monument lies at a geographic transition zone between the eastern Cascades Range and the Great Basin Desert (Figure 1.1) on the northern flank of the Medicine Lake shield volcano. The Monument ranges from 1,200 meters (4,040 feet) at the northern boundary to 1,685 meters (5,529 feet) near the southern boundary. Lava Beds contains excellent examples of recent lava flows, cinder and splatter cones, and over 400 lava tube caves with nearly 47 kilometers (29 miles) of passageway. The monument contains a number of Great Basin vegetation communities.

Natural Resource Concerns

Lava Beds is located in a Class I airshed. The air quality of the local area is threatened by wood burning stoves and vehicles in the local basin, seasonal prescribed and natural fire occurrence, and other impacts. Monitoring of air quality indicators is done throughout the year through cooperative agreements with the California Environmental Protection Agency Air Quality Board, and an Interagency Monitoring of Protected Visual Environments (IMPROVE) station was installed by the University of California, Davis Crocker Nuclear Lab Air Quality Group in 2000.

Lava Beds National Monument initiated a dark night sky program to preserve the views of the spectacular nighttime skies over the monument. A monitoring program and lighting protocols have been established to guide future management actions in the monument. The night skies would also be negatively impacted by the construction of the Four Mile Hill geothermal plant and transmission lines.

The majority of human visits at Lava Beds National Monument are concentrated in the small fraction of caves that are open and accessible to the general public. These caves bear the brunt of the impact of thousands of visitors each year. The loss of bighorn sheep and changes to lava tube environments resulting from human impact are unique problems for this park unit and are among the chief management concerns.

Non-native species: Lava Beds has a variety of exotic plants to contend with and is taking aggressive measures to inventory and eradicate these species. Several species are currently managed, including common mullein (*Verbascum thapsus*), horehound mint (*Marrubium vulgare*), bull thistle (*Cirsium vulgare*), and yellow sweetclover (*Melilotus officinalis*). Other species such as cheatgrass (*Bromus tectorum*) and tumble mustard (*Sisymbrium altissimum*) are common and at this time and uncontrollable in certain areas of the monument. Canada thistle (*Cirsium canadensis*) and perennial pepperweed (*Lepidium latifolium*) are incipient non-native species problems.

The non-native animals in Lava Beds include the Brown-headed Cowbird (*Molothrus ater*) and European Starling (*Sturnus vulgaris*). Feral horses (*Equus caballas*) roam surrounding areas, but are not found in the Monument.

Rare species: Despite the presence of unusual habitats and disjunct species, there are no plant species of special concern due to rarity known from the monument. Federal and state animal species of special concern in the monument include Bald Eagles (*Halioeetus leucocephalus*), Cooper's Hawk (*Accipiter cooperii*), fringed myotis (*Myotis thysanodes*), long-eared myotis (*Myotis evotic*), long-legged myotis (*Myotis volans*), pallid bat (*Antrozous pallidus*), silver-haired bat (*Lasionycteris noctivigans*), Townsend's big-eared bat (*Corynorhinus townsendii*), western small-footed myotis (*Myotis ciliolabrum*), and American badger (*Taxidea taxus*).

D. Oregon Caves National Monument

Park Purpose and History

Oregon Caves National Monument was created by Presidential proclamation in 1909 to protect a three mile cave "of unusual scientific interest and importance." The proclamation states that "...the public interests will be promoted by reserving these caves with as much land as necessary for the proper protection thereof." The Monument was transferred to the National Park Service in 1933. From 1933 to 1942, the Civilian Conservation Corp landscaped a 7-acre National Historic District and put in roads, trails, buildings, and the public water supply. A 1999 general management plan recommended protecting the monument's edges, scenic vistas, caves, and public water supply by adding 1,381 ha (3,410 acres) of adjacent late-successional US Forest Service lands (these lands have not been incorporated in the monument to date).

Biophysical Setting

Oregon Caves National Monument is a small unit in the steep, mountainous terrain of the Siskiyou Mountains of southwestern Oregon with elevations ranging from 1,122 to 1,670 meters (3,680 to 5,480 ft.) for the main part of the monument. Despite its small size, Oregon Caves is ecologically diverse, due to its relief, high soil and vegetation heterogeneity, and presence of karst cave environments. Old-growth conifer forest, montane meadows, oak woodlands, and cave dwelling species endemic to the monument are resource highlights.



Cave formations at Oregon Caves National Monument.

Natural Resource Concerns

Forest fragmentation from the logging of adjacent lands has created effects on vascular plants and vertebrates that are specific management concerns. Global temperature and CO₂ increases are likely changing many aspects of the cave environment, including cave biota, the solutional balance of cave limestone, and the ambient temperatures in the cave rooms. The effects of increasing CO₂ are unknown, but cave communities can be particularly sensitive to atmospheric composition change. These changes affect temperatures, microclimates, carbon dioxide concentrations and the amount and type of

organic input into caves. Caves communities are also highly vulnerable to local anthropogenic stressors such as any locally introduced organic matter and to alterations of cave entrances. Such changes affect microbial populations, which are the main basis of the macroinvertebrate food chain, and this in turn affects cave predators. Caves are truly among the most sensitive natural resources to anthropogenic impacts.

Suppression of fire may have increased bark beetle, mistletoe, white-fir, and shrub density, as well as decreased the abundance of Douglas-fir and meadow vegetation. However, a period of 100+ years without evidence of fire occurred prior to fire suppression in the 1600's (Agee 1991).

<u>Non-native species</u>: Port Orford cedar root rot, caused by *Phytophthora lateralis*, has invaded nearby areas and could kill many of the Port Orford cedar trees in the monument. Another non-native *Phytophthora*, the cause of Sudden Oak Death (*P. ramorum*), could arrive at any time and cause considerable mortality to tan oak (*Lithocapus densiflorus*).

Rare species: No plants with special status are known to live in Oregon Caves National Monument. However, it is home to a number of special status animals (Appendix E), including the federally listed Northern Spotted Owl (*Strix occidentalis*). Five bat species of concern occur in the cave: Pacific western big-eared bat (*Corynorhinus townsendii*), long-eared myotis (*Myotis evotis*), fringed myotis (*Myotis thysanodes*), long-legged myotis (*Myotis volans*), and Yuma myotis (*Myotis yumanensis*).

E. Redwood National and State Parks

Park Purpose and History

Redwood National Park was established in 1968 and expanded in 1978. Prairie Creek Redwoods State Park was established in 1923, Del Norte Coast Redwoods State Park in 1925, and Jedediah Smith Redwoods State Park in 1929. These parks were established to preserve significant examples of the primeval coastal redwood forests and the prairies, streams, seashore, and woodlands with which they're associated for purposes of public inspiration, enjoyment, and scientific study, and to preserve all related scenic, historical, and recreational values.

Biophysical Setting

Redwood National and State Parks are composed of four units located along the Pacific coast (Figure 1.1). The park is about 81 km (50 miles) long, with 56 km (35 miles) of coastline. The park extends 0.5 km (0.25 miles) offshore for a total of 2,240 ha (5,533 acres) of intertidal and subtidal marine habitat. The prime resources of the park are its 15,782 ha (38,982 acres) of old-growth redwood forests, extraordinary anadromous fish runs, and relatively pristine coastline. Elevations within the park range from sea level to 996 m (3,267 feet) at an unnamed peak in the Coyote Creek drainage.



Aerial view of Redwood National Park and adjacent Pacific Ocean.

Natural Resource Concerns

The old growth redwood forests were the primary resource and purpose for establishment of the Redwood National and State Parks. The parks contain over 20,000 hectares of cutover lands, and much of the parks remain in second growth Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*) forest due to past logging that removed redwoods. These second growth forests lack multi-canopy structure, composition, density, and understory vegetation common in old growth forests. Without active management, a significant portion of the park's redwood forestland will likely remain degraded for many years. Park managers need status and trend information to develop an ecologically sound second growth management plan.

Erosion and sedimentation associated with past logging and logging roads threaten the aquatic and riparian resources of certain streams within the parks, primarily Redwood Creek and its tributaries. Of the total estimated erosion potential from all roads within the Redwood Creek basin (5,185,000 cubic meters of sediment), 85 percent is associated with roads upstream of the national park on private timberlands. These poorly constructed and maintained roads represent a major threat to resources along the main stem of Redwood Creek in the national park. The Redwood Creek federal flood control

project levees have altered the physical and biological functioning of the Redwood Creek estuary. This has resulted in major adverse impacts such as decreased water circulation in the estuary and sloughs, fewer deepwater pools, decreased extent of wetlands and riparian habitat, deteriorated water quality, degraded juvenile rearing and adult holding habitat for fish, and reduced wildlife and invertebrate abundance and diversity in the lower Redwood creek valley and estuary. There is great concern over the effects of these numerous impacts on native salmonid fisheries.

The Redwood National and State Parks lack information about the marine plants and animals in tidepools and other intertidal communities, and marine resources in general. The potential impact from offshore ship traffic is a concern because major oil or hazardous material discharge from this activity can pose a serious threat to these marine resources.

Non-native species: The impacts of non-native species on native species and communities are a major concern. Baseline data on abundance and distribution of non-native plant and animal species is needed. Cape ivy (*Delairea odorata*) and English ivy (*Hedera helix*) are invading old growth redwood forests, while European beach grass (*Ammophila arenaria*) is displacing potential nesting habitat of the threatened snowy plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus* ssp. *nivosus*). In the Bald Hills habitat of Redwood, non-native annual and perennial grasses have invaded and French and Scotch brooms (*Genista monspessulana* and *Cytisus scoparius*) could become widespread problems. Riparian areas at lower elevation are threatened by Himalaya berry (*Rubus armeniacus*) and other species. Both Port Orford cedar root rot (*Phytophthora lateralis*) and Sudden Oak Death (*P. ramorum*) may become problems. The latter has more abundant hosts (e.g. tan oak (*Lithocarpus densiflorus*).

Barred Owls (*Strix varia*) and bullfrogs (*Rana catesbiana*) have also been found in the park. There is also the non-native bullhead (*Ictalurus negulosus*) in Redwood Creek (H. Sakai, pers. Comm.), which could possibly be infected with other marine and freshwater invaders. The park currently contains no known marine invaders. However, a small population of mosquito fish (*Gambusia affinis*) was found in Humboldt Bay, about 75 km to the south. Feral pigs (*Sus scrofa*) were previously present at Redwood. Both feral pigs and Wild Turkeys (*Meleagris gallopavo*) could become problems in interior areas of the park in the future.

Rare species: There is one federally listed plant, beach layia (*Layia carnosa*), that is found growing on the dunes in the southern end of Redwood. Fifty-seven sensitive plants have been recognized by the California Native Plant Society which are known or very likely to be found in the park, as shown in Appendix E. Three federally threatened bird species, the Northern Spotted Owl (*Strix occidentalis caurina*), Marbled Murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*), and Bald Eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*) are known to reside in the park forests. The Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*), a threatened species, may occur on beaches in the park. The recently de-listed Peregrine Falcon (*Falco peregrinus*) nests in the park. The federally threatened red-legged frog (*Rana aurora draytonii*) occurs in the park. The endangered leatherback turtle

(*Dermochelys coriacea*), threatened Brown Pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis californicus*), green turtle (*Chelonia mydas*), olive Ridley sea turtle (*Lepidochelys olivacea*), loggerhead turtle (*Caretta caretta*), Stellar sea lion (*Eumatopias jubatus*), and the recently de-listed Aleutian Canada Goose (*Branta canadensis leucopareia*) are seasonal transients. The endangered tidewater goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*) may still be residing in the Redwood Creek estuary and other estuarine systems within the parks coastal boundaries.

F. Whiskeytown National Recreation Area

Park Purpose and History

The Whiskeytown Unit of the Whiskeytown-Shasta-Trinity National Recreation Area is managed by the National Park Service. The enabling legislation of Congress, which established Whiskeytown on November 8, 1965 under Public Law 89-336, stated that the park was to "provide...for the public outdoor use and enjoyment" of the specified reservoirs and surrounding lands "by present and future generations, and for the conservation of scenic, scientific, historic, and other values contributing to public enjoyment of such lands and water."

Biophysical Setting

Whiskeytown National Recreation Area is located at the southeastern edge of the Klamath Mountains in northern California. Spanning elevations from 244 meters (800 feet) at the southern end of lower Clear Creek, to 1,893 meters (6,209 feet) at the summit of Shasta Bally, Whiskeytown contains an exceptional diversity of plant communities, including a variety of xeric shrublands, oak woodlands, and montane forests that surround the nearly fourteen square-kilometer Whiskeytown Lake. The park is also home to the only known population of the globally imperiled Howell's alkali grass (*Puccinellia*



Aerial view of Whiskeytown National Recreation

howellii). Seven major streams feed the lake, and the lower reaches of Clear Creek form an important tributary to the Sacramento River, from which anadromous fish come to spawn below the reservoir.

Natural Resource Concerns

Whiskeytown attracts approximately 800,000 visitors per year. Recreational activities in Whiskeytown include boating, swimming, water skiing, sailing, scuba diving, bird watching, fishing, hunting, hiking, horseback riding, mountain biking, camping,

picnicking, gold panning, off-road vehicles, and NPS interpretive programs. The population of the nearby city of Redding has grown from 16,000 to 80,000 in the last 20 years, encroaching on habitat near the park. It is expected that as visitor use increases, so will encounters with wildlife. Bear-human incidents and mountain lion-human incidents are of particular concern to land managers.

Prior to the establishment of the park, resource extraction and development impacted the resources of the park's watersheds. Mining for minerals and gravel has resulted in numerous dredge tailing piles, furrows in and around creek beds, and sedimentation of creeks, as well as numerous pits, adits, tunnels, scars, and old roads and trails throughout the park. Logging on most commercially valuable timberland and generally unstable decomposed granite soils contribute significant amounts of decomposed granite to creeks and Whiskeytown Lake. In an effort to comply with the Central Valley Improvement Act and to improve anadromous fish habitat, park staff have implemented an active watershed restoration program. However, the park has insufficient information about its water resources to ensure compliance.

Fire suppression is another major park concern, which managers believe has caused a deterioration of ecosystem health. Increased tree density, late successional species, and landscape homogeneity that results from fire suppression threaten the stability, diversity, and resilience of mixed conifer forests.

Non-native species: Whiskeytown is host to over 200 exotic plant species, which account for well over 20 percent of the plant species in the park. Currently, the most troublesome exotic species in terms of invasiveness are tree of heaven (*Ailanthus altissima*), yellow starthistle (*Centaurea solstitialis*), Scotch and French broom (*Cytisus scoparius* and *Genista monspessulana*), and Himalayan blackberry (*Rubus armeniacus*). Several areas have been successfully treated. Control efforts for the next several years are expected to achieve a significant reduction in exotic plant populations in the park. Treated areas will require monitoring and re-treating indefinitely. The park works cooperatively with the Shasta County Weed Management Area to eradicate exotics across the boundaries of the park. Sudden Oak Death (*Phytophthora ramorum*) could have profound effects on the park, as California black oak (*Quercus kellogii*), which is abundant at mid elevations, is highly susceptible to the disease.

Whiskeytown Reservoir contains five species of introduced fish that may be potential ecological threats: largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*), spotted bass (*Micropterus punctulatus*), smallmouth bass (*Micropterus dolomieu*), green sunfish (*Lepomis cyanellus*), and brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*). The bullfrog (*Rana catesbiana*) is the dominant amphibian at Whiskeytown Reservoir. Both Cowbirds (*Molothrus ater*) and European Starling (*Sturnus vulgaris*) have been detected at Whiskeytown during network inventories. Feral pigs (*Sus scrofa*) have been recorded at Whiskeytown. All these and Wild Turkeys (*Meleagris gallopavo*) could become future problems.

1.2 The Need for Long-term Monitoring of Park Lands

The mission of the National Park Service is to conserve unimpaired the natural and cultural resources and values of the national park system for the enjoyment of this and future generations (National Park Service 1988). In 1992, the National Academy of Sciences analyzed the National Park Service management and concluded that a fundamental metamorphosis was needed. They determined that the development of a standardized program of inventory and monitoring was vital to the mission of the National Park Service. As a result, recent legislation (National Park Omnibus Management Act of 1998) requires that park managers know the condition of natural resources under their stewardship. Therefore, a national strategy for acquiring baseline information and monitoring changes in a science-based fashion has been developed. The strategy has three major components:

- 1. Completion of basic natural resource inventories in support of future monitoring efforts.
- 2. Creation of experimental prototype monitoring programs to evaluate alternative monitoring designs and strategies.
- 3. Implementation of operational vital-signs monitoring in all natural resource parks.

As part of this new program, parks containing significant natural resources were organized into 32 networks, and each network has been asked to develop detailed study plans for the inventory and monitoring of its parks. This document represents the culmination of the process of the development of an integrated, long-term monitoring plan for the Klamath Network.

The National Park Service has crafted policies in response to federal laws and directives that firmly mandate the linking of inventory, monitoring, and management in order to fulfill the NPS mission to conserve parks unimpaired. Appendix B summarizes the development of these NPS policies and the Klamath Network Charter.

Perhaps the most fundamental question that arises in trying to understand the legislative mandates and the importance and need for monitoring is: Who is interested in the information provided by monitoring and why?

Monitoring is critical to adaptive management of park ecosystems in which management actions are viewed as ecological experiments in an iterative process of maintaining or improving ecological integrity. The concept of ecological integrity provides a framework for evaluating changing environmental conditions and biodiversity through monitoring. Ecological integrity refers to ecosystem wholeness, including the presence of appropriate species, populations, and communities and the occurrence of ecological processes at appropriate rates and scales (Angermeier and Karr 1994, Karr 1991) as well as the environmental conditions that support these taxa and processes (Dale and Breyeler 2001). Human impacts to ecological integrity are assessed based on comparison with reference conditions based on a naturally functioning ecosystem (Karr 1991). The natural range of variability for ecosystems may be impossible to define, so determination of an acceptable

range of variation, although imperfect, may be a more attainable goal (Holling and Meffe 1996, Parrish et al. 2003). A broad-based monitoring program therefore will be an excellent source of information about the integrity of park ecosystem that will grow in value through time.

Monitoring is needed to provide managers not only with assessments of what is changing, but to improve their understanding of park ecosystems. These needs compliment and reinforce each other and inform park management and research. Well-informed, long-term monitoring of biological and physical phenomena in an integrated, multi-scale fashion across the parks and neighboring landscapes will improve understanding of ecosystems. Such monitoring can identify additional monitoring and research needs as well as appropriate and scientifically defensible management actions. Thus, the monitoring information is vital to managers and researchers, as well as other individuals and organizations sharing an interest in the Klamath Network parks and the greater landscape in which they reside.

1.3 Strategic Goals for Performance Management (GPRA Goals)

The Government Performance Results Act (GPRA 1993) insures that daily actions and expenditures of resources are guided by both long-term and short-term goals in pursuit of the park's primary mission. Goals must be quantifiable with measurable outcomes. Table 1.2 illustrates the progress towards major inventory and monitoring related GPRA goals in the parks of the Klamath Network. The Monitoring Plan for the Klamath Network is a significant and specific step towards fulfilling GPRA Goal Category I (Preserve Park Resources) for this Network. The service-wide goal pertaining to Natural Resource Inventories specifically identifies the strategic objective of inventorying the resources of the parks as an initial step in protecting and preserving park resources (GPRA Goal Ib1). This goal tracks the amount of basic natural resources information that is available to parks and performance is measured by what datasets are obtained.

Table 1.2. GPRA goals specific to KLMN parks and relevant to the long-term network monitoring plan.

GPRA Goal	Goal #	Parks with this goal
Natural and cultural resources and associated values are protected, restored, and maintained in good condition and managed within their broader ecosystem and cultural context.	Category Ia	All
Disturbed lands restored	Ia1A	All
Exotic vegetation contained	Ia1B	All
Threatened and endangered species and species of special concern	Ia2B, Ia2X	All
Air quality and wilderness values	Ia3	CRLA, LABE, ORCA, REDW, WHIS
Water quality unimpaired	Ia4	REDW, WHIS
Cultural landscapes in good condition	Ia7	All
The National Park Service contributes to knowledge about natural and cultural resources and associated values; management decisions about resources and visitors are based on adequate scholarly and scientific information.	Category Ib	All
Natural resource inventories	Ib1	All
Vital signs for natural resource monitoring identified	Ib3	All
Geologic resources inventory	Ib4A	All
Geologic resources mitigation and protection	Ib4B	LABE, LAVO
Aquatic resources (including cave ice)	Ib5	All

The servicewide I&M Program identified twelve basic inventory datasets as necessary for the foundation of a monitoring program. The service-wide long-term goal is to "acquire or develop 87% of the outstanding datasets identified in 1999 of basic natural resource inventories for all parks." The Klamath Network has made considerable progress on the 12 basic inventories, with the majority of the inventories in the planning phase, underway, or complete as of December, 2006 (Table 1.3).

Table 1.3. Status of 12 Basic Inventories for Klamath Network Parks, December, 2006.

TITLE PARK CODE						
	CRLA	LABE	LAVO	ORCA	REDW	WHIS
Air Quality	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress
Air Visibility	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress
Cartography	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete	Complete
Climate	Partially Complete	Partially Complete	Partially Complete	Partially Complete	Partially Complete	Partially Complete
Geology Map	Scoped 2004, Map In Progress, Bib Completed, Report Planned	Scoped 2004, Map In Progress, Bib Complete, Report Planned	Scoped 2000, Map IW, Bib Done, Report Planned	Scoped 2004, Map In Progress, Bib Complete, Report Planned	Scoped 2004, Map In Progress, Bib Complete, Report Planned	Scoped 2004, Map Done, Bib Complete, Report In Progress
Natural Resource Bibliography	Bib In Progress	Bib In Progress	Bib In Progress	Bib In Progress	Bib In Progress	Bib In Progress
Soils Map	Complete	Planned	Planned	Complete	In Progress	Planned
Species Distribution	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress	In Progress
Species Lists	4/6 *Certified	6/6 *Certified	6/6 *Certified	6/6 *Certified	6/6 *Certified	6/6 Certified
Vegetation Map	Planning Started	Planning Started	In Progress	Planning Started	Planning Started	Completed
Water Bodies Map	In Progress	Complete	In Progress	Planned	Planned	Complete
Water Quality Assessment	Planned	Report Complete	Report Complete	Report Complete	In Progress	Report Complete

1.4 Formation of the Network and Approach to Planning

A. General Approach to Vital Signs Monitoring

The Klamath Network is following the basic seven step approach to designing a monitoring program, described in detail in the recommended approach for developing a network monitoring program located on the world wide web at http://science.nature.nps.gov/im/monitor/index.htm :

- 1. Form a network Board of Directors and a Science Advisory Committee.
- 2. Summarize existing data and understanding.
- 3. Prepare for and hold a scoping workshop.
- 4. Write a report on the workshop and have it widely reviewed.
- 5. Hold meetings to decide on priorities and implementation approaches.
- 6. Draft the monitoring strategy.
- 7. Have the monitoring strategy reviewed and approved.

These steps are incorporated into a three-phase planning and design process that has been established for the NPS monitoring program. Phase I of the process, which is described in this report, involves assembling the network team, defining the project scope, goals, and objectives that are necessary to execute it; beginning the process of identifying, evaluating, and synthesizing existing data; developing draft conceptual models; and completing other background work that must be completed before the initial selection of vital signs for monitoring. Phase II of the planning and design effort involves prioritizing and selecting the vital signs that will be included in the network's initial integrated monitoring program. Phase III entails the detailed design work needed to implement monitoring, such as developing specific monitoring objectives for each vital sign, sampling protocols, statistical sampling design, a plan for data management and analysis, and determining the type and content of various products of the monitoring effort such as reports and websites.

B. Organizational Structure and Function of the Network

The Network has an eight-member Technical Advisory Committee composed of Natural Resource Chiefs from each of the six parks, the Network Coordinator, and the Data Manager. The Committee meets in September of each year to discuss and make decisions on the technical aspects of designing and implementing the program, and to find ways to integrate inventory and monitoring with other research or management efforts. The Network's Inventory and Monitoring Coordinator serves as the chair of the Committee. For decisions on permanent hiring of staff, significant allocations of funds, or the overall direction of the program, the Committee makes recommendations to an eleven-member Board of Directors. A Science Advisory Committee composed of the Technical Committee and additional NPS and USGS scientists meet on an *ad-hoc* basis to provide scientific reviews, comments, and advice to the program.

The Board of Directors includes all six Park Superintendents, two rotating Natural Resource Chiefs, and the Regional and Network Inventory and Monitoring Coordinators.

The Board meets each year following the winter Technical Advisory Committee meeting to facilitate fast action on any recommendations. Final authority on the overall program rests with the Board. The bylaws and decision-making process of the Technical Committee and Board of Directors are detailed in a charter signed by the Superintendents from all six parks. A more detailed discussion of the Program's administrative structure is provided in Chapter 10 and a copy of the Klamath Network Charter is presented in Appendix B.

C. Goals for Vital Signs Monitoring

The goal of this program is to identify and monitor vital signs of park ecosystems. The concept is similar to a human health examination, in which critical indicators such as weight, blood pressure, and body temperature help detect health problems and determine remedies or focus diagnostic tests. Similarly, the NPS Vital Signs Monitoring program is intended to monitor key elements of park ecosystems to help detect ecological problems that need further research or management action.

Specifically, Service-wide goals for vital signs monitoring are to:

- Determine status and trends in selected indicators of the condition of park ecosystems to help managers make better-informed decisions and work more effectively with other agencies and individuals for the benefit of park resources.
- Provide early warning of abnormal conditions and impairment of selected resources to promote effective mitigation and reduce management costs.
- Provide data to better understand the dynamic nature and condition of park ecosystems and to provide reference points for comparisons with other altered environments.
- Provide data to meet certain legal and congressional mandates related to natural resource protection and visitor enjoyment.
- Provide a means of measuring progress towards performance goals.

The Klamath Network Inventory and Monitoring Program will pursue these goals and further focus the program's effort through the following provisions:

- The majority of funding and efforts will be directed at monitoring vital signs that
 are relevant to multiple parks and that are best served by the economies of scale
 provided by the Network program.
- In cases where one or more parks are already monitoring vital signs indicators, and the Network assumes the cost of monitoring, the park agrees to reallocate park-based funds and staff to other natural resource efforts in that park.

- Design the Network program to pursue strategic integration and quality of information for a core set of resource indicators, not simply to provide funding for disparate projects. Additional research and monitoring of park-specific aspects will continue, expanding the core set of network indicators.
- Strive to maintain strong intercommunication, integration, and where appropriate, cost-sharing between inventory, monitoring, and research efforts in the network parks. The Network anticipates that monitoring vital-signs status and trends will provide a basis for developing and testing hypotheses for cause-and-effect research. It is the responsibility of the Klamath Network Inventory and Monitoring Program to make key findings available to parks and research partners on reasonably frequent timelines and with adequate clarity. It is the responsibility of the Network's Natural Resource Advisory Committee, science staff, and their partners to conceive and locate funding for allied research projects.
- Attempt to work with other NPS networks to develop joint monitoring approaches that are useful to all units in the NPS system that have similar resources or needs.
- Work to maintain close partnerships with other landowners of the Klamath region
 to inform them of our inventory, monitoring efforts, and findings. The Network
 views the national park lands to be among the more protected of the land
 allocations in each biophysical setting of the region, with value as bellwether sites
 for measuring synoptic environmental change, as well as reference sites for
 comparison with more heavily impacted areas.

D. Vital Signs Scoping Process

The process for identifying vital signs has occurred in the parks over the last several years and a network-wide effort began in 2002. Most of the intensive activity occurred spring and summer 2004 and is described in greater detail in Appendix G. This network-wide scoping process involved scoping workshops among resource staff within the parks, outside experts, and Klamath Network Staff.

1.5 Biophysical Overview of The Klamath Network

The park units of the Klamath Network span a region of exceptional complexity. We use the general term Klamath Region to describe this broad region of northern California and southern Oregon that includes our parks. Steep climatic, geologic, and topographic gradients and varied disturbance regimes in the Klamath Region yield biological diversity that is exceeded in few similar sized areas within the North American Continent or in temperate regions worldwide (DellaSala et al. 1999). Although the National Park Service manages less than five percent of the Klamath Region, the Klamath Network parks contain diverse climates and mosaics of landforms and ecosystems. Across the Network parks, terrestrial habitats range from mesic coastal redwood forests containing biomass accumulations that are among the highest recorded in any terrestrial ecosystem (Fujimori 1977, Sawyer et al. 2000) to barren alpine tundra and xeric sagebrush steppe. Aquatic

ecosystems include marine habitats along the Pacific Coast, the deepest natural lake in the U.S., man-made reservoirs, and many streams and rivers. Wetlands are correspondingly diverse with riparian, seep, marsh, fen, and wet meadow types represented. Other unique habitats include karst and volcanic caves, hot springs, and lava flows (Appendix E).

The following sections will briefly discuss the most important natural forces that have shaped the ecosystems of the Klamath Region: environmental history, climate and geology, disturbance processes, and biotic interactions.

A. Environmental History: The "Central Significance" of the Klamath Region

Over forty years ago, Whittaker (1961) noted the "central" significance of the Klamath Region to Pacific Coast plant geography. This significance is based on the intersection of many widespread western vegetation types and high levels of endemism. There is a greater variety of vegetation in the region than in any equivalent sized region of the western U.S., with Sierran, Vancouverian, Californian, Great Basin, Columbia Plateau, Rocky Mountain, and Colorado Plateau floristic elements represented (McLaughlin 1989). The primary reasons for this floristic diversity appear to be a position at the intersection of major winter and summer airmass boundaries (Mitchell 1976) (Figure 1.2), as well as an ancient landscape with high topographic and geological diversity (Roth 2000). The Klamath Region is a globally recognized center of plant paleo-endemism (Whittaker 1961, Stebbins and Major 1965, Smith and Sawyer 1988). Many of the region's endemic species are associated with unique hydrologic or edaphic sites, such as serpentine soils, rocky outcrops, or wetlands, which provide local refuge from competition or fire (Coleman and Kruckeberg 1999).

Other taxa, such as reptiles and amphibians, also show major northern and southern distributional limits in the Klamath Region, leading to high regional richness. However, endemism is relatively low, only three species are endemic (Bury and Pearl 1999), including a new species, the Scott Bar salamander (*Plethodon asupak*), that has just been discovered (Mead et al. 2005). A number of southern mammal species also reach their northern limits in the Klamath Region, such as ringtail (*Bassariscus astutus*), the broadfooted vole (*Scapanus latimanus*), and the Brazilian free-tailed bat (*Tadarida brasiliensis*).

The Klamath and Rogue rivers, two of the three primary watersheds draining the Klamath Region, have also been recognized as a center of endemism for inland fish species (Moyle 1976, Hughes 1987). Snyder (1907) noted the distinctiveness of the Klamath River fauna, and distinguished it from the Columbia River fauna to the north and the Sacramento River fauna to the south. Endemic species, such as the Klamath smallscale sucker (*Catastomus rimiculus*), Pit-Klamath brook lamprey (*Lampetra lethophaga*) and the federally endangered Lost River sucker (*Deltistes luxatus*) and shortnose sucker (*Chasmistes brevirostris*) are native to the upper Klamath and Pit river basins. The region also harbors evolutionarily significant runs of chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus*)

tshawytscha), coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*), and steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*).

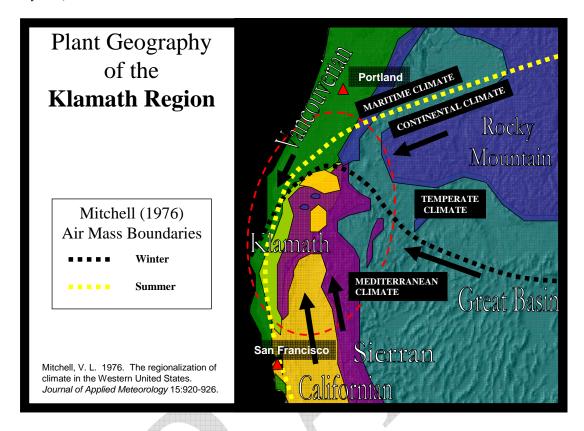


Figure 1.2. This diagram illustrates major floristic provinces influencing the Klamath Region of northern California and southern Oregon and the location of major air mass boundaries outlined by Mitchell (1976).

B. Abiotic Processes

Abiotic processes are critical features of park ecosystems in their own right and because they create the envelope of suitable environmental conditions upon which all life depends (Gates 1980). For plants, abiotic factors have long been known to be fundamental to the distributions of communities (Merriam and Steineger 1890, Clements 1936), as well as individual species (Whittaker 1960, 1965; Walter 1973; Neilson and Wullstein 1983; Woodward 1987; Ohmann and Spies 1998). For other taxonomic groups, these fundamental controls have typically been less clearly understood, but recent studies suggest they may be very important (Hansen and Rotella 2002). For example, relationships between climate or other physical factors and terrestrial species distributions or diversity have been noted for birds (Root 1988, Hansen and Rotella 2002), butterflies (Fleishman et al. 1998, Pyle 2002), amphibians (Bury and Pearl 1999), reptiles (Currie 1991, Shrine et al. 2002), and bats (Erickson and West 2002). Consequently, abiotic gradients are believed to be important for interpreting patterns of species diversity and distribution for the majority of life forms. Here, we provide an overview of the abiotic forces affecting Klamath Park ecosystems and their geographic variation.

Although there is considerable biogeographic overlap across the Klamath Region as a whole, the geologic history and lithology of different parts of the Region is starkly different. A rough boundary line running from Redding north through Yreka, California and northwest from Ashland to Roseburg, Oregon can be used to separate the ancient mixed rocks of the Klamath-Coastal subregion from the volcanic landscapes to the west from the Cascade-Modoc subregion to the east. Here we describe the geology and climate of the two subregions.

Geology

The Klamath-Coastal subregion, which includes the coastline and contains the Redwood, Oregon Caves, and Whiskeytown units, is characterized by extremely rugged topography with elevations ranging from sea-level to over 2,700 m. The Klamath-Coastal subregion is distinguished by its great variety of rock types, including some of the oldest rocks found in North America (Orr and Orr 1999). The subregion's extremely complex geology derives from the plate tectonic processes that formed the lithology. Starting approximately 150-200 million years ago, the North American continental plate began to move west, riding over and subducting beneath it the thinner, heavier ocean plate (Alt and Hyndman 1978, Orr and Orr 1996). As the ocean plate descended under the North American plate, sediment and pieces of ocean crust were scraped off and accreted up against the western edge of the North American continent. Rocks from North America's coastal plain and continental shelf were also compressed onto the edge of the continent (Alt and Hyndman 1978). The repeated accretion and compression of ocean floor and, in some cases, island archipelago terranes onto the western edge of the North American landmass, created the complex geologic structure of the Klamath-Coastal subregion (Norris and Webb 1990, Wallace 1983). Today, the accreted terranes form a series of convex belts of rocks, decreasing in age from Ordovician (approximately 505 million years old) in the interior to Jurassic (approximately 150 million years old) along the coast (Norris and Webb 1990). These belts form a convex arc whose arms strike southeast towards the Sierra Nevada and northeast towards the Blue Mountains of eastern Oregon (Whittaker 1960, Orr and Orr 1999), approximating the ancient coastal shoreline. Welding and metamorphism by volcanic intrusions, and subsequent warping and folding have further altered these rocks. The result is the distinctive "fruit cake" geology of the subregion, a chaotic mixture of many different types of rocks of different ages, including metavolcanics, gabbros, granodiorite, and ultramafics, such as peridotite (Norris and Webb 1990).

The complex geology of the Klamath-Coastal subregion provides a variety of different soils for vegetation. Various minerals enrich many rocks in the Klamath-Coastal subregion. Serpentine soils, which are derived from ultramafic rocks such as serpentinite, peridotite, and dunite, contain high amounts of magnesium, chromium, and nickel (Walker 1954). These soils often sustain rare and endemic plant species (Franklin and Dyrness 1973, Smith and Sawyer 1988). A number of the minerals of the Klamath-Coastal subregion have also been mined in the past, including chromium, nickel, gold, copper, and zinc (Norris and Webb 1990).

The Cascades-Modoc subregion was created by the relatively recent volcanism of plate tectonic processes. Crater Lake and Lassen Volcanic are in the Cascades Mountains, while Lava Beds is just to the east on the Modoc Plateau of the subregion. As the ocean plates that formed the Klamath region were subducted deeper below the surface, the rocks forming the plates began to melt. Some of this molten rock escaped back to the surface forming the volcanoes of the Cascade Mountains and the basalt flows that cover much of the Modoc Plateau (Alt and Hyndman 1978). The rocks that form the current Cascade Mountain Range include basalt, andesite, and dacite (Norris and Webb 1990, Orr et al. 1992). The Cascades crest is crowned with dramatic snowcapped composite volcanoes, such as Mounts Shasta and McLaughlin. Mount Lassen is a relatively unique dacite dome. Majestic Crater Lake occupies the caldera of Mount Mazama, which exploded cataclysmically approximately 7,700 years ago (Orr and Orr 1996). Many of the high-elevation peaks of the region were glaciated at various times during the Pleistocene (0.01-1.8 million years ago) and some, such as Mount Shasta, still have glaciers (Norris and Webb 1990). Along the eastern edge of the Cascade Range are the basalt flows of the Modoc Plateau at 1,000 to 1,500 meters elevation. Continued volcanism in this region has created a wide variety of geomorphic and geothermal features, including cinder cones, pumice flats, lava plains, lava tubes, hot springs, and fumaroles. The unique hydrogeology of the volcanic landscape allows snowmelt and rainfall to percolate deep into bedrock aquifers and emerge from numerous springs. As a result, many creeks show very stable baseflows and provide cold water refugia for sensitive aquatic species such as bull trout (Salvelinus confluentus).

Climate

The high topographic relief and the proximity of the region to the Pacific Ocean create exceptionally steep climatic gradients in the Klamath-Coast subregion. The climate of the subregion is typified by cool, wet winters and cool to warm, dry summers (see Figure 1.3). Particularly important for determining these seasonal climate conditions are the locations and strengths of the Pacific high-pressure and the Aleutian low-pressure systems throughout the year. In winter, the Aleutian low-pressure system is relatively strong and the Pacific high-pressure system is relatively weak. As a result, the prevailing westerlies (i.e., the winds that occur globally at midlatitudes from approximately 30° to 60° north and south) are positioned farther to the south and there are increased numbers of cyclonic storms (i.e., storms originating from low-pressure systems) (Bryson and Hare 1974, Miller 2002). These winter storms pick up moisture over the Pacific Ocean and deposit it inland creating cool, wet conditions and provide the majority of the region's annual precipitation. Topography also affects the distribution of precipitation, with precipitation generally decreasing in the region from higher elevation areas in the west to lower elevation areas in the east (Miller 2002). Despite deep, late-lying snowpacks, winters at high elevations in the Klamath region are relatively mild and the ground rarely freezes.

In summer, the Pacific high-pressure system is relatively strong, the Aleutian low-pressure system is relatively weak, and the prevailing westerlies and cyclonic storms have shifted northward, creating dry conditions in the Pacific Northwest (Bryson and Hare 1974). As a result, summers in the Klamath region are dry with less than 15% of its annual precipitation occurring between June and September. Along the coast, summer precipitation comes in infrequent, weak frontal disturbances. Away from the coast, summer precipitation occurs as



Old growth redwood forest at Redwood National Park.

occasional thundershowers, especially in the mountains. Lightning associated with thunderstorms commonly ignites fires in late summer and fall.

Although the Klamath-Coastal subregion is strongly moderated by the Pacific Ocean throughout the year, coastal influences are especially marked in summer. From June to September, warm, moist Pacific air is advected eastward by prevailing winds across the cold, upwelling coastal waters of the California current, creating a layer of moist and relatively cool air along the coast (Miller 2002). This moist, cool air is overlain by warmer, drier air, making this moist, marine layer relatively stable. The coastal mountains add to this stability by blocking the moist air from moving inland (Mitchell 1976), although occasionally a "marine push" can develop that will move cool, moist air from the Pacific Ocean over the Coast and Cascade mountain ranges into the interior (Mock 1996). The frequency and length of time a given site is under the influence of this maritime air plays a major role in the ecology of the Klamath-Coastal subregion. Maritime stratus and fogs decrease the amount of solar radiation that reaches the ground, lowering maximum temperatures and increasing the humidity during the otherwise dry summers. All these factors differentiate the maritime-influenced western portion of the Klamath region from the drier eastern portion of it (Waring 1969). Coastal slopes and valleys that are favorably oriented to northwest summer winds, are bathed in summer fogs and fog drip that is a vital source of moisture for redwood trees (Burgess and Dawson 2004). These marine air masses effectively delimit the landward extent of the redwood biome.

The Cascades-Modoc subregion is more isolated from the moderating climatic influence of the Pacific Ocean, resulting in a drier and less complex climate overall. At low to moderate elevations, summers are warm and dry and winters are cooler than along the coast (see Figure 1.3). The western slopes of the Cascade Mountains receive abundant precipitation from winter storms, with the majority falling as snow at higher elevations. There is a significant increase in storm frequency with latitude in the Cascades, such that Crater Lake Park Headquarters receives nearly 50% percent more precipitation days through the year than Lassen Volcanic Park Headquarters. This precipitation difference reflects the latitudinal transition from the Mediterranean climate regime of California to

the temperate maritime climate of the Pacific Northwest (Mitchell 1976). Above 2,000 m elevation, snowpacks reach great depths and often cover the ground into summer. Snowfields currently persist year-round on Lassen Peak. The eastern slopes of the Cascades and adjacent Modoc Plateau are much drier, which is reflected in the open vegetation of these areas (as described under Terrestrial Ecosystems, later in this report). During winter, cold continental air frequently invades the Modoc Plateau, but these cold air masses do not often reach the higher elevations of the Cascades or spill over onto the Cascades' western slopes. Summer thunderstorms are frequent along the Cascades' crest and eastern slopes in summer.

Water Resources

The aquatic resources within the Klamath Network are very diverse. Crater Lake National Park is responsible for managing the clearest and seventh deepest caldera lake in the world. In addition, Crater Lake contains deep lake thermal areas. There are also small ponds outside of the Mt. Mazama caldera, numerous streams and springs, and several important wetland areas inside and outside the caldera. Lassen includes the largest concentration of freshwater lentic systems in the network, with over 250 ponds and lakes (many of which have never been inventoried), as well as several major stream drainages, geothermal areas, and sphagnum bogs along lake margins. Lava Beds has limited surface water, although Tule Lake and the Tule Lake Wildlife Refuge are present near the northern border of the monument. Lava Beds National Monument does, however, have approximately 28 known ice caves that are an important source of water for wildlife and, historically, for humans. At Oregon Caves National Monument, Cave Creek flows through the main cave and wet meadows and seeps are present in the upper canyon of the creek. Redwood National Park has marine and freshwater aquatic resources. Marine resources include nearshore marine habitat and coastal estuaries and lagoons. Freshwater resources include Redwood and Mill Creeks and their watersheds, and slope fens and seeps. Whiskeytown contains a large reservoir (Whiskeytown Lake) created by damming Clear Creek, as well as many of its perennial and intermittent tributary streams. Historically, mining was a common enterprise within Whiskeytown National Recreation Area, and as a result acid mine drainage and mercury contamination are of major concern. Whiskeytown also contains the only known global population of Howell's alkali grass (Puccinellia howellii), which is restricted to a mesosaline fen in the park.

Other Abiotic Forces

Physical forces, especially the mechanical forces of water, shape the environment strongly. Wave shock, tides and tidal movements and salt spray are very important in coastal environments (Ricketts and Calvin 1939, Bakker 1971). Chemical reactions of solutes precipitating out of solution and forming crystals structures in cave environments. Most of these processes are dynamic in nature and are therefore described in a section below, under Dynamic Processes.

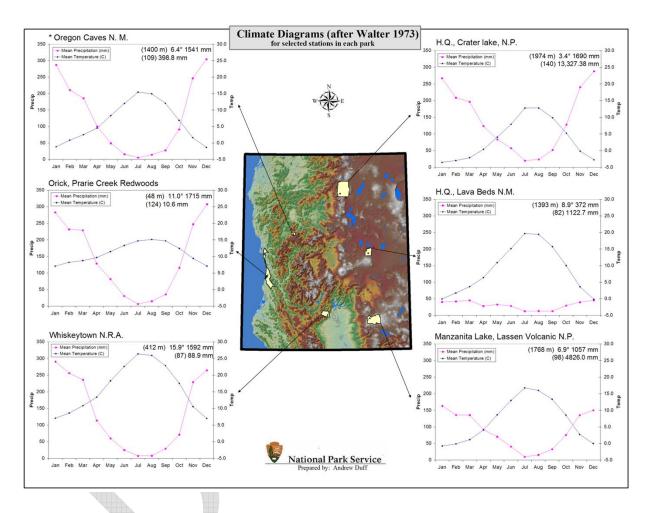


Figure 1.3. Climate diagrams of selected stations in the Klamath Network parks. All parks in the Network show a Mediterranean-type climate regime, with precipitation and temperature regimes perfectly out-of-phase. Summer drought is a defining feature, but is mitigated in parks with coastal fogs (Redwood) or late-lying snowpacks (Crater Lake and Lassen). Note the decrease in precipitation and increase in annual temperature variation (continentality) from the westernmost to easternmost parks.

C. Biotic Processes

Biotic processes amplify the complexity of the physical environment, further increasing the diversity of habitats and lifeforms. In complex landscapes such as the Klamath Region, variation in the abiotic and biotic environment often occurs in concert, yielding ecological zonation. This has long been recognized in terrestrial ecosystems (Merriam and Steineger 1890) and is evident in aquatic and wetland ecosystems as well (Ricketts and Calvin 1939, Vannote et al. 1980, Mitsch and Gosselink 2000). We employ the zonation concept in the description of ecosystems that follow for several reasons, including: (1) the number of individual ecosystem types in the Klamath Network has never been determined, there would likely be too many systems to describe in this report, and they would be largely redundant in gradients or dynamics, (2) zonation is consistent with the continuum concept (Gleason 1926) and gradient analysis (Whittaker 1956), which jointly convey the insight that ecosystems are not categorically different, but vary in specific combinations of conditions. This environmental variation often governs species distributions more directly than is implied by discrete ecosystem classifications.

Ecological zonation is evident in all three major ecosystem domains of the Klamath parks. In terrestrial environments, there is unmistakable variation in plants, animals, and associated species across the major climate gradients from coast to interior, as well as along the elevation gradient within a given climate zone. In aquatic environments, zonation is evident in the change in abiotic and biotic conditions from headwaters to downstream and from shorelines to the pelagic zones of lakes. Near-shore environments have some of the sharpest zonation patterns known and described in ecology (Ricketts and Calvin 1939). In all these examples, identification of the abiotic or biotic variables driving change is fundamental to developing a robust monitoring design.

On the other hand, the biotic processes can provide influences that differ from abiotic controls. Successional pathways may diverge autogenically (in other words, by intrinsic biological properties), driven by positive feedback between sessile organisms and their abiotic environment. This may influence the environment to favor established incumbent assemblages over those that would occur strictly under the influence of abiotic factors. For example, plants can influence fire regimes and soil fertility in favor of their maintenance (Jackson 1968, Latham et al. 1996). Positive feedback with fire helps nonnative cheatgrass (*Bromus tectorum*) invade and replace Great Basin shrublands (Mack et al. 2000). A self-reinforcing relationship with fire allows patches of native shrub vegetation to persist where conifer vegetation might replace it in the Klamath Mountains (Odion et al. 2004). On the coast, intertidal algae can harbor predators of barnacles and mussels, thereby helping maintain algal beds by preventing the sessile animals from taking space (Petraitis 1987).

A grasp of the interactions among trophic levels of organisms is also essential for understanding and maintaining biological diversity. Primary consumers, such as grazing ungulates, slug, snails, insects, free-swimming zooplankton, or benthic grazers pose fundamental controls on the composition and relative abundances of primary producers.

This is nowhere more important than in lakes. In Crater Lake and other lakes in the parks major fluctuations in the relative abundances of zooplankton and phytoplankton species and associated lake properties, such as visibility and dissolved oxygen levels, occur over seasons and years.

Among primary producers, dominance and diversity relationships appear fundamental for an understanding of spatial and temporal patterns of species diversity, as well as the distributions of rare taxa. The highest richness of organisms of many types of primary producers reaches its highest levels in moderately productive environments (Huston 1994, Rosenzweig 1995, Sarr et al. 2005). The mechanisms purported to maintain these patterns are interspecific competition and a dominance hierarchy among native species that involves trade offs between growth rates and stress tolerance (Smith and Huston 1989). At intermediate levels of productivity, many species can coexist. This may be one reason intermediate productivity landscapes, such as in Whiskeytown, have such high floristic diversity.

The roles of insect, avian pollinators, and seed dispersers are ever-present and many examples exist to demonstrate their importance. For example, the Clark's nutcracker, a visible and characteristic resident along the rim of Crater Lake, is believed to be an essential dispersal vector for the windless seeds of the whitebark pine (Tomback 1982, Lanner 1996). Seed caching acorn woodpeckers and squirrels (Verts and Carraway 1998) play a similar role for both oaks and pines, and woodpecker acorn granaries are common in oak woodlands of the parks but have little to do with dispersal. Jays are another matter.

There is little doubt that predator and prey interactions are very important in ecosystems where the full complement of species remain such as in the rocky intertidal zone. In terrestrial environments, large predators have been removed, or reduced for many years. Wolves (*Canis lupus*), grizzly bear (*Ursus arctos horribilis*), wolverines (*Gulo gulo*), and lynx (*Lynx canadensis*) are a few of the predator species are known or believe to be extinct in or around the Klamath parks. Mountain lion (*Felis concolor*) populations are rebounding from past depredations. The effects of these major changes in trophic structure are poorly understood.

D. Major Ecosystem Types

Marine Ecosystems

The waters off the Pacific Coast in Redwood National and State Parks are some of the most biologically diverse marine habitats in North America. The park's marine resources depend on the health of the entire ocean ecosystem to support the thousands of floral and faunal species that flourish in these habitats. The marine ecosystem includes areas located within inland, enclosed, nearshore, and offshore waters (Ceres 2004). Five major zones have been described for the nearshore and offshore waters on the coast of California. These five zones include: 1) splash or supralittoral zone, 2) upper midlittoral zone, 3)

lower midlittoral zone, 4) lowlittoral or infralittoral fringe, and 5) subtidal zone (adapted from Ricketts and Calvin 1939, Bakker 1971, Kozloff 1973). Each of these microelevation zones also has different features depending upon substrate characteristics (e.g.,

sand vs. rocky substratum). Plants and animals that are more suited to living on land than in the water occupy the splash zone. The plants and animals of the intertidal (littoral zones) are subjected to a range of environmental conditions not encountered in the stability of the deep ocean or subtidal zone, including, substrate, wave shock, relative humidity, air temperature, and exposure to direct sunlight and wind. The specific characteristics of these conditions determine which organisms inhabit intertidal communities. For example, soft substrates, such as sandy beaches and



Rocky intertidal habitat at Redwood National and State Parks.

mudflats, support an abundance of burrowing animals, whereas sessile, or attached, organisms are more typical of rocky shores.

Primary producers in marine ecosystems include diatoms, dinoflagellates, and algae which make their food through photosynthesis. Primary consumers consist of zooplankton such as larval forms of sea animals, copepods, worms, radiolarians, and foraminifers. Secondary consumers feed on animals that eat producers and primary consumers, and include starfish, fish, seals, and sea lions (Bakker 1971).

Marine Flora: The splash zone, species with adaptations to terrestrial life predominate (Bakker 1971). Common shore plants are yellow sand verbena (*Abronia latifolia*), dunegrass (*Leymus mollis*), and beach morning glory (*Calystegia soldanella*). A variety of lichens and algae may be found in this first zone, including *Verrucaria* spp., *Caloplaca* spp., *Xanthoria* spp., and *Physcia* spp.

Additionally, lush growths of algae flourish in California's inter- and subtidal zones. California, as well as the rest of the west coast of the United States, has the distinction of possessing one of the world's richest seaweed floras, comparable to that of Japan and Australia (Bakker 1971). The kelp forest is a diverse and complex community that occurs along much of the California coast. Kelp forests are composed of dense stands of large brown algae, giant kelp (predominately bull kelp (*Nereocystis leutkeana*) or bladder kelp (*Macrocystis pyrifera*), with an understory of various red and brown algae. Giant kelp is one of the fastest growing plants known, growing an average of 10 inches a day in the spring. A frond of kelp may eventually reach a height of over 250 feet (Ceres 2004). The fronds, anchored on the rocky sea floor by strong holdfasts, grow upwards towards the surface, buoyed by gas-filled floats.

In the subtidal zone, phytoplankton, the basis of almost all ocean food webs, thrives under nearshore summer conditions. Nutrient rich waters, combined with long sunlight days, cause the phytoplankton to bloom. The resulting abundance increase in phytoplankton causes herbivorous and carnivorous zooplankton populations to expand. These zooplankton provide food for fish, which are consumed by birds and mammals that inhabit these coastal habitats (Bakker 1971).

<u>Marine Fauna:</u> Species commonly observed in the splash or supralittoral zone include rock lice (*Ligia oceanica*), acorn barnacles (*Chthamalus dalli* and *Balanus glandula*) and the limpet (*Collisella digitalis*) (Kozloff 1973). The checkered periwinkle (*Littorina scutulata*) and the gray periwinkle (*Littorina keenae*) can be found in the lower levels of the splash zone where they move about on the rocky faces.

In the intertidal or littoral zones, limpets and barnacles are adapted to withstand fierce wave action. Purple sea urchin (*Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*) can be found in very wave-ridden places where they use their tough spines to scrape rock cavities. Additionally, California mussels (*Mytilus californianus*), common starfish (*Asterias forbesii*), and leaf barnacles (*Pollicipes polymerus*) or gooseneck barnacles (*Lepas anatifera*) inhabit these littoral zones. Many intertidal organisms use rock fissures, overhangs, and other possible refuges to escape wave impact, for example, nudibranchs and chitons,

Subtidal kelp forests provide food and shelter for a number of organisms, including anemones, abalones, sea stars, urchins, and sea cucumbers. Kelp beds are also home to fish such as the blacksmith (*Chromis punctipinnis*), kelp bass (*Paralabrax clathratus*), and several species of rockfish (*Sebastes* spp.) and surfperch (*Hyperprosopon* spp.). Harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina*) forage the kelp beds for fish.

Freshwater Ecosystems



Montane riparian system

The freshwater aquatic environments in the Klamath Network include a diversity of stream, lake, and wetland ecosystems that vary with climate zone and elevation (Table 1.4). In general, the well-watered and steep terrain of most of the Klamath parks supports high drainage densities of intermittent and permanent streams but limited areas of wetlands. Most of the stream kilometers in the Network are in headwater streams. Consequently, the parks of the Klamath Network form important water source areas for cities,

agriculture, and aquatic species downstream. Several important exceptions to this general pattern are noteworthy. Semi-arid Lava Beds National Monument, with excessively

drained fractured lava solids, contains no permanent surface streams. However, the monument does hold ice caves that are important water sources for native species. The undulating backcountry of Lassen Volcanic National Park is unique, with mild topography and many lakes, ponds, and littoral wetlands. The caldera of Mount Mazama that holds Crater Lake is internally drained, though seepage may be an important groundwater source for streams around the caldera margins. Whiskeytown Reservoir, formed by the impoundment of Clear Creek and supplemented with water diverted from the Trinity River, is a large relatively stable and productive lake ecosystem, though the majority of its aquatic vertebrates are introduced species.

With the exceptions noted, the aquatic and wetland environments of the Klamath parks are dispersed throughout the landscapes. Despite their relatively small aerial extent, freshwater ecosystems of the Klamath Network are believed to be critical for landscape diversity wherever they occur.

Lake and Pond (Lentic) Ecosystems: Lake and pond environments are of particular interest in the Klamath Network. Crater Lake is a lentic ecosystem of global significance. However, most of the Network's lakes are in Lassen Volcanic National Park, which contains over 250 temporary to permanent lakes and ponds. Lassen park staff considers these aquatic environments, and their marsh and wet meadow edges, to host the majority of the park's biological diversity. Zonation of lakes is similar to the coastal environment in many ways. The primary gradient in lakes is also the transition from the wave-influenced, well-illuminated, and seasonally variable littoral zone to the comparatively stable, but light-poor depths. The depth of the lake and nature of the shoreline also strongly influence the attributes of the water column and the organisms present. This contrast is well expressed by comparing the deep, rock-bottomed, and ultra-oligotrophic Crater Lake, with the shallow, sedge-fringed eutrophic lakes and ponds of the Lassen highlands. Whiskeytown Reservoir presents another unique suite of monitoring issues, with its fluctuating shoreline, high visitor use, and largely non-indigenous aquatic life.

Stream and River (Lotic) Ecosystems: Flowing water (lotic) ecosystems change predictably from headwaters downstream. The river continuum (Vannote et al. 1980) is an excellent depiction of this elevational pattern that is well expressed in the Klamath parks. Water flow begins in most parks with intermittent springs, perennial springs, or seeps that often support distinctive water chemistry and associated flora and fauna. For example, the alkali wetland at Whiskeytown supports the only known global population of Howell's Alkali grass. Most stream distance in



Crater Lake.

the Network are relatively high gradient streams tightly coupled to the mountain watersheds they drain. At the other extreme of the continuum are estuarine habitats of Redwood Creek and the Klamath River, where dynamics within the water column as well as tidal influences are preeminent. Intermediate sized streams are less common in the Klamath parks, but they are of special interest because they have high visitor use as well as high habitat value for sensitive species such as salmonids, amphibians, and riparian birds.



Aquatic macrophyte vegetation at Horseshoe Lake, Lassen Volcanic National Park.

Freshwater Flora: Despite occurring in a region known for its floristic diversity and endemism (Whittaker 1961), the aquatic and wetland flora of the parks remains less understood. Many dominant aquatic and riparian plant species have broad regional and continental distributions. These include marshes of broad-leaved cat-tail (Typha latifolia) and bulrush (Scirpus acutus) at Whiskeytown, and high elevation marshes dominated by beaked sedge (Carex utriculata) and inflated sedge (C. vesicaria), as well as emergent and submergent communities of water lily (Nuphar

luteum), buckbean (Menyanthes trifoliatum), and aquatic smartweed (Polygonum amphibium). However, regionally rare species are often associated with wetlands, such as the California pitcher plant (Darlingtonia californica) in Redwood National and State Parks and the white-beaked rush (Rhynchospora alba) in Lassen Volcanic National Park. The discovery of the world's only known population of Howell's alkali grass (Puccinellia howellii) in a saline seep at Whiskeytown hints at the floristic diversity they contain (Appendix E). The nonvascular aquatic flora also appears to be rich, though it is even less well known. Ultra-oligotrophic Crater Lake has a rich plankton flora and scientists are just beginning to study a ring of bryophytes that occur at intermediate depths (100 to 300 m) depth around the submerged caldera walls. Comparable studies have yet to be implemented in most other lakes ponds and streams of the Network. Unfortunately, nonnative plant species are very well established in a number of aquatic and riparian habitats of the Network, and are likely expanding.

<u>Freshwater Fauna:</u> The Klamath region is rich in endemic runs of native salmonids, and these species are still important in the ecology of streams in Redwood National and State Parks (see Appendix A). Anadromous fish including chinook salmon (*Onchyrhynchus tshawytscha*), coho salmon (*Onchyrhynchus kisutch*), and summer steelhead trout (*Onchyrhynchus mykiss gairdneri*) are known to occur in the parks' streams and rivers. Potadromous species, such as bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) occur in Sun Creek of

Crater Lake National Park. Amphibian species include Del Norte salamander (*Plethodon elongatus*), Olympic salamander (*Rhyacotriton olympicus*), tailed frog (*Ascaphus truei*) in the cool streams and wetlands near the coast, and yellow-legged frog (*Rana boylii*) and western toad (*Bufo boreas*) in the interior. At higher elevations, fish have historically been absent, while amphibians such as the Cascades frog (*Rana cascadae*), and long-toed salamander (*Ambystoma macrodactylum*) are locally important. The invertebrate fauna is well-studied in Crater Lake (Drake et al. 1990) and Redwood Creek, but relatively little is published for other parks or habitats in the Network.

Table 1.4. Dominant freshwater ecosystems of Klamath Network parks. Abundance codes are: A = abundant, C = common, and U = uncommon, P = uncommon but prominent, P = unknown, P = unknown,

Ecosystem Type	Park Unit						
	Crater	Lassen	Lava	Oregon	Red-	Whiskey-	
	Lake	Volcanic	Beds	Caves	wood	town	
Stream (Lotic) Ecosystems							
Ephemeral Streams	C	C	U	C	C	Α	
Headwater Streams	A	A	-	U	A	A	
Gathering (Mid-order)	C	C	-		C	C	
Streams	\						
Large (high-order)	-	4	_	-	U	-	
Streams and Rivers							
Subterranean streams	1	-	-	P	-	-	
Lake and Pond (Lentic) Eco	systems						
Ephemeral Ponds	U	C	U	-	U	U	
Ponds	U	A	-	U	-	-	
Lakes	P	A	-	-	-	-	
Reservoirs	-		-	-	-	P	
Ice Caves		_	U	-	-	-	
Wetland (Palustrine) and Riparian (Riverine) Ecosystems							
Springs and Seeps	C	C	-	С	C	C	
Wet Meadows	C	C	-	U	U	U	
Riparian Forests	С	С	-	U	С	С	
Riparian Shrublands	U	U	-	-	U	U	
Alkali Meadows	-	?	-	-	-	U	
Geothermal Areas	U	U	-	-	_	-	

Aquatic habitats are known to be very important for native wildlife, especially birds and a number of riparian dependent mammals. Many songbirds nest and/or feed in riparian areas. A variety of wading birds and diving and dabbling ducks and cormorants are dependent on aquatic ecosystems. Common riparian-associated birds include the Blackheaded Grosbeak (*Pheucticus melanocephalus*), Bullocks Oriole (*Icterus bullockii*), Common Yellowthroat (*Geothlypis trichas*), Coopers Hawk (*Accipiter cooperii*), Red-Shouldered Hawk (*Buteo lineatus*), Song Sparrow (*Melospiza melodia*), Swainsons

Thrush (*Catharus ustulatus*), and Yellow-Breasted Chat (*Icteria virens*). Riparian and wetland-associated mammals include the beaver (*Castor canadensis*), river otter (*Lutra canadensis*), water vole (*Microtus richardsoni*), muskrat (*Ondatra zibethicus*), water shrew (*Sorex patustris*), and mink (*Mustela vison*). Many bat species use the riparian environment for commuting and foraging, including silver-haired bats (*Lasionycteris noctivagans*), and red bats (*Lasiurus blossevillii*). Yuma myotis (*Myotis yumanensis*) are associated with streams, rivers, ponds, or lakes (Whitaker et al. 1977, Zeiner et al. 1990), and have been more closely associated with water than any other North American bat species (Verts and Carraway 1998).

A number of aquatic ecosystems of the network have been degraded by human activities. Table 1.5 shows water bodies that are considered impaired due to degradation.

Table 1.5. Listed impaired (303(d)) water bodies of the Klamath Network.

303(d) Impaired Water/Park	Pollutant/Stressor	TMDL Priority*	
Klamath River (Redwood)	Temperature	High	
	Nutrients	High	
Redwood Creek (Redwood)	Temperature	Low	
	Sedimentation/Siltation	Medium	
Willow Creek (Whiskeytown)	Metals	Low	
Swim Beaches (Whiskeytown)	Bacteria	Low	

Terrestrial Ecosystems

<u>Terrestrial Vegetation and Flora:</u> Despite the relatively close proximity of the park units to one another, the steep environmental gradients across the region create unique biophysical environments in each park and a great variety of vegetation. We provide a more detailed description of these vegetation types in Appendix C (see also Barbour and



Lassen Peak

Major 1977, Franklin and Dyrness (1988), and Atzet et al. (1996)). In general, the vegetation grades from dense, mesic forests of massive redwood trees (*Sequoia sempervirens*) at the wetter western edge of the Region, towards mixed evergreen forests dominated by Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*) and tanoak (*Lithocarpus densiflorus*) with increasing elevation and distance from the coast. At still-higher elevations in the Klamath

Region, a variety of conifer forests and

subalpine vegetation are common. With descending elevation, woodlands and shrublands in rain shadow areas of the interior valleys of the Klamath Region are found. Moving eastward and upward into the southern Cascades, oak woodlands grade into mainly Douglas-fir and mixed conifer forests dominated by ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa*) or white fir (*Abies concolor*). Farther upslope, lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* ssp. *contorta*), Shasta red fir (*Abies magnifica* var. *shastensis*) and finally, mountain hemlock (*Tsuga mertensiana*) and whitebark pine (*Pinus albicaulis*) forests dominate the subalpine zone. Peaks that surpass treeline, such as Mt. Lassen, support alpine vegetation. The east slope of the Cascades is much drier, supporting mainly lodgepole and ponderosa pine forests. With decreasing elevation, where the eastern slope of the Cascades approaches the high desert climate of the Columbia Basin and Modoc Plateau, ponderosa

pine forests become more open and intergrade with western juniper (Juniperus occidentalis) woodlands and sagebrush steppe. At lower elevations, arborescent vegetation gives way entirely to Great Basin shrublands dominated by big sagebrush (Artemisia tridentata ssp. tridentata), rubber rabbitbrush (Ericameria nauseosus), and antelope bitterbrush (Purshia tridentata). Less widespread vegetation types that are linked more to edaphic controls, such as montane meadows, riparian communities, and coastal prairies, add greatly to biodiversity where they occur. These general gradient patterns are modified by aspect, soil type, fire, and other disturbances.



Ponderosa pine forest

Table 1.6 summarizes the vegetation types and their abundance within the parks. We did not use any single classification systems, but a combination of vegetation types described in Franklin and Dryness (1988) and Barbour and Major (1977).

Table 1.6. Dominant zonal terrestrial vegetation types of Klamath Network parks. Abundance codes are: A = abundant, C = common, U = uncommon, and ? = unknown.

	Park Unit					
Vegetation Type	Crater	Lassen	Lava	Oregon	Red-	Whisky-
	Lake	Volcanic	Beds	Caves	wood	town
Coastal Environments						
Coastal strand and dune	-	-		-	C	-
Coastal Prairie	-	-	-	-	U	-
Coastal Forest	-		-	-	C	-
Low Elevation Environments	1					
Redwood Forest	-	-		_	A	-
Mixed Evergreen Forest	-	-	-	C	C	C
Oak/Pine Woodlands*	-	U	-	U	C	A
Annual Grassland	-		-		1	U
Chaparral	-		-	_	U	C
Mid Elevation Environments				100		
Mixed Conifer Pine	A	A	-	U	U	C
Mixed Conifer Fir	A	A	_	A	C	C
Montane Chaparral	-	U	-	U	ı	U
Upper Montane Environmen	ts					
Subalpine Forest	A	A	-	-	ı	U
Montane Meadows	C	A	-	U	1	U
Alpine	U	C	-	-	ı	-
Great Basin Environments						
Sagebrush Steppe		-	Α	-	-	-
Juniper Woodland/Savanna	-	-	A	-	1	-
Ponderosa Pine Woodland	C	U	C	-	ı	U
Rosaceous Shrubland	-	-	C	-	-	-
Mesic and Hydric Environments						
Riparian Forests	C	C	-	C	C	C
Freshwater Marsh	-	C	-	-	U	U
Seeps and Springs	C	C	-	U	C	U
Alkali Meadows	-	?	-	-	-	U
Sphagnum Bog	U					

^{*}At low elevations, usually dominated by Oregon White Oak (*Quercus garryana*) and at slightly higher to mid-elevations by California black oak (*Q. kellogii*).

Terrestrial Fauna: The terrestrial fauna of the Klamath Region is also diverse. Large ungulate mammals such as elk and deer are found in all parks. Redwood National and State Parks has a population of Roosevelt elk (Cervus elaphus rooseveltii), while pronghorn (Antilocapra americana) is frequently sighted in Lava Beds and occasionally in Crater Lake. The Tehama deer herd, the largest migratory herd of mule deer (Odocoileus hemionus) in California, use Lassen highlands in summer. Among the large mammals that have been extirpated are potential keystone species such as grizzly bears (Ursus arctos horribilis) and grey wolves (Canus lupus), as well as



Roosevelt Elk (*Cervus elaphus rooseveltii*) at Redwood.

bighorn sheep (*Ovis canadensis*) at Lava Beds. A bighorn sheep reintroduction program was attempted in this area in the 1970's but it failed due to an outbreak of disease from domestic sheep in surrounding areas. The mountain lion (*Felis concolor*) is the largest remaining carnivore, and it is still common. Other unusual and charismatic fauna include the wolverine (*Gulo gulo*). This wide ranging species is suspected to still utilize Crater Lake National Park (Michael Murray, pers comm.). Annual surveys are made by helicopter in an effort to find its tracks in the snow. Another uncommon member of the weasel family, the fisher (*Martes pennanti*), may be found at Redwood and surrounding environs. A wide variety of smaller mammals, including foxes, coyotes, species of rabbits and hares, skunks, raccoons, many species of rodents, bats, and shrews live throughout the parks.

The Klamath Region harbors a fascinating and diverse avifauna that mirrors its habitat diversity. Sooty Shearwaters (*Puffinus griseus*) soar over the Pacific Ocean, where, Tufted Puffin (*Fratercula cirrhata*), Black-Footed Albatross (*Diomedea nigripes*), and Brown Pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis*) frequent the haystack rocks and rough, cold surf. Along the beaches and rocky coast, a variety of shorebirds breed, migrate and winter, among which American Oystercatcher (*Haematopus palliatus*), Western Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*), Black Turnstone (*Arenaria melanocephala*) and Dunlin (*Calidris alpina*) are frequent. This western boundary of the region is occupied by the Marbled Murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*) as it carries food from its off shore foraging waters towards its nest where nestlings wait as much as 50 miles inland in old growth conifer stands.

In the cathedral-like redwood stands of the region, Swainson's and Varied Thrushes (*Catharus ustulatus* and *Ixoreus naevius*, respectively) and Winter Wrens (*Troglodytes troglodytes*) dwell near the ground and Chestnut-Backed Chickadees (*Poecile rufescens*) and Golden-crowned Kinglets (*Regulus satrapa*) forage among the treetops in forest stands that they share with the Northern Spotted Owl (*Strix occidentalis caurina*). Oak

woodlands form patches adjacent to the redwood forests near the coast and next to the inland mixed-conifer forests. Acorn Woodpeckers (*Melanerpes formivicorus*), Lewis' Woodpeckers (*Melanerpes lewis*), Bewick's Wrens (*Thryomanes bewickii*), White-Breasted Nuthatch (*Sitta carolinensis*) and Bushtits (*Psaltriparus minimus*) make their homes in these deciduous trees and associated shrubs along with birds as small as the nectar eating Anna's Hummingbird (*Calypte anna*) or as large as the predacious Red-Shouldered Hawk (*Buteo lineatus*).

Hermit and Audubon's Warblers (*Dendroica occidentalis* and *Dendroica* (*coronata*) auduboni) and Hammond's Flycatcher (*Empidonax hammondii*) are among the birds that characterize the more inland mixed conifer forests. At mid-elevations, the conifers mix with hardwood trees including big-leafed maples and tanoaks where Black-Throated Grey Warblers (*Sylvia nigrescens*), Black-Headed Grosbeaks (*Pheucticus melanocephalus*), Pacific-Slope Flycatchers (*Empidonax difficilis*) and Cassin's Vireos (*Vireo cassinii*) are abundant. At higher elevations true fir associated birds include Mountain Chickadees (*Poecile gambeli*), Pine Siskins (*Carduelis pinus*), Fox Sparrows (*Passerella iliaca*) and White-Headed Woodpeckers (*Picoides albolarvatus*). East of the Cascades, Vesper Sparrows (*Pooecetes gramineus*), Western Meadowlarks (*Sturnella neglecta*) and Canyon Wrens (*Catherpes mexicanus*) live in the Shrub-steppe and lava flows, and Pygmy Nuthatches (*Sitta pygmaea*) in the ponderosa and Jeffrey pines. Golden Eagles (*Aquila chrysaetos*) soar majestically above the high desert landscape.

The Klamath region has the highest herptofauna diversity of any similar sized mountainous region in the Pacific Northwest (Bury and Pearl 1999). Amphibians are of greatest abundance and diversity in the mesic maritime climates of Redwood National and State Parks, whereas the reptile fauna is most rich and abundant at low- to midelevation warm, dry interior valleys, such as at Whiskeytown. The species of terrestrially reproducing amphibians within the Network parks are all from the family Plethodontidae. They include: clouded salamander (*Aneides ferreus*), black salamander (*Aneides flavipunctatus*), California slender salamander (*Batrachoseps attenuatus*), ensatina (*Ensatina eschscholtzii*), Dunn's salamander (*Plethodon dunni*), and Del Norte salamander (*Plethodon elongatus*) (Bury and Pearl 1999, Olson 1991). Some of the more common terrestrial reptiles from Network parks include: northern alligator lizard (*Elgaria coerulea*), Mt. Shasta alligator lizard (*Elgaria coerulea* ssp. *shastensis*, at Whiskeytown), sagebrush lizard (*Sceloporus graciosus*), western fence lizard (*Sceloporus occidentalis*), western skink (*Eumeces skiltonianus*), rubber boa (*Charina bottae*), and racer (*Coluber constrictor*).

Subterranean Ecosystems

Karst caves and lava tubes are interesting subterranean features of the landscape in the Klamath region. Oregon Caves National Monument is a karst cave network, while Lava Beds contain an abundance of lava tubes. Many of the processes occurring within the cave network are greatly influenced by air, water, and food exchange with the upland environment. Although the monument is small, it is very rich in biological and geological



Silver-haired bat, (*Lasionycteris* noctivagans). Captured in Whiskeytown.

diversity. Most karst caves are created by erosion, usually when rain water or a stream, slightly acidified by carbon dioxide in the soil, seeps downward through cracks and crevices in layers of limestone (Royo 2004). The mild acid gradually dissolves small passages, and as rainwater continues to enter the system and more limestone is dissolved, the passages become micro-caverns that enlarge, forming caves.

Lava Beds National Monument is the site of the largest concentration of lava tube caves in the United States, containing nearly 200 caves (NPS 2004a). Lava tubes are natural conduits through which hot, fluid lava travels beneath the surface of

a flow. The lava forms a tube-like cave once flow has ceased. When the 1,000° C lava pours from a volcano, the outer edges and surface of the flow cool rapidly and begin to slow down and harden. This outside layer acts as an insulating material while the rest of the flow beneath remains hot and fast-moving. The flow continues like a river, even though the surface has hardened. When the eruption stops and the lava river drains, a lava tube remains. Many of the tubes at Lava Beds were formed around 30,000 years ago after an eruption at Mammoth Crater located near the southern boundary of the park. However, the monument has both much younger and older tubes.

Sometimes portions of a lava tube's roof may collapse as it cools. These openings allow plants, animals, and precipitation to enter and create a world of life within. A few of the tubes at Lava Beds are ice caves, where rain collects and the air temperature remains constantly at or below freezing.

<u>Subterranean Flora:</u> The lava outcrops and lava tube collapse systems support a great diversity of plant life, from an impressive variety of lichens and mosses to plants such as desert sweet (*Chamaebatiaria millefolium*) and the aromatic desert (purple) sage (*Salvia dorrii*). A variety of fern species are present in cave entrances, including the spreading wood fern (*Dryopteris expansa*) and the western swordfern (*Polystichum munitum*) (Smith, S., A Flora of Lava Beds NM, in prep.). These disjunct populations of ferns are well outside of their climatically-determined range.

Subterranean Fauna: Oregon Caves is home to over 160 cave animal species, including eight of the fifteen bat species found in Oregon: Townsend's big-eared bats (Corynorhinus townsendii), big brown bats (Eptesicus fuscus), California myotis (Myotis californicus), long-eared myotis (Myotis evotis), little brown myotis (Myotis lucifugus), fringed myotis (Myotis thysanodes), long-legged myotis (Myotis volans), and Yuma myotis (Myotis yumanenesis). At Lava Beds, all of the aforementioned plus six additional species of bats have been documented. These additional bat species include: pallid bat

(Antrozous pallidus), silver-haired bat (Lasionycteris noctivigans), Brazilian free-tailed bat (Tadarida brasiliensis), hoary bat (Lasiurus cinereus), western small-footed myotis (Myotis ciliolabrum), and western pipistrelle (Pipistrellus hesperus). Furthermore, Lava Beds is seasonally home to the largest, northern-most population of the Brazilian free-tailed bats in the United States. The massive colony annually numbers in excess of 100,000 adult females, which give birth and nurture their young in one lava tube during the summer months.



Brazilian free tail bat (*Tadarida brasiliensis*) evening fly out from lava tube at Lava Beds.

Many animal species live in the cave mouths and interior passages at Lava Beds, including: the Violet-Green Swallow (*Tachycineta thalassina*), Pacific tree frog (*Hyla regilla*), pika (*Ochotona princeps*), bushy-tailed woodrat (*Neotoma cinerea*), and dusky footed woodrat (*Neotoma fuscipes*). There are at least 30 different known microbes that live in the subterranean features at Oregon Caves. Some produce black manganese stains, and some appear lichen-like, while others create the slippery steps, and some even look like a white clay. Springtails and some beetles are soil animals that are pre-adapted to live in caves. The subterranean features of Oregon Caves are also home to tissue moths (*Triphosa haesita*), harvestmen (Order *Opiliones*), woodrats (*Neotoma* sp.), snails and slugs (Order *Neotaenioglossa*) and spiders (Order *Araneide*). There are more than 8 endemic cave species found within Oregon Caves, more than any other cave system in the United States. Oregon Caves' age, moderate size, and proximity to organic soils results in a relatively high biodiversity.

E. Species of Special Concern: Rare, Endangered, and Sensitive Species

Rare, endangered, or sensitive species are a monitoring concern in all parks of the Klamath Network (see Appendix E). These species, protected by law, draw disproportionate attention because they are especially imperiled, are charismatic or otherwise well known. Many of these species are threatened by regional factors such as habitat fragmentation, altered fire regimes, agricultural development, and urbanization. In addition, each of the six Network parks has conducted a "vital signs" workshop to determine those key resources that are indicative of ecosystem health. Taxa identified as being of concern to all Network parks include amphibians, neotropical migratory birds,

threatened, endangered, and sensitive plant and animal species, and invasive non-native plants and animals.

Sensitive species may play an important role as indicators of subtle habitat changes associated with management. Amphibians or bryophytes, for example, may be among the most sensitive taxa in forests of the Pacific Northwest, and may illustrate the biological significance of management changes more effectively than other prominent organisms, such as vascular plants.

Preliminary lists of threatened, endangered and sensitive plants and animals for the Network yielded over 200 species and taxa that were either Federal or State listed, or tracked by heritage programs or native plant societies in either California or Oregon (see Appendix E). In addition, specific parks have highlighted species or communities of concern in several parks.

F. Dynamic Processes

Many important dynamic processes may operate as disturbances. Disturbance may be defined as any relatively discrete event in time that disrupts ecosystem, community, or population structure and changes resources, substrate availability, or the physical environment (Pickett and White 1985). Disturbances affect resource availability and physiological stress for organisms. Disturbances of variable area, frequency, and intensity also enhance habitat heterogeneity and regulate the dominance of highly competitive species, reducing competitive exclusion. Both effects will tend to increase diversity (Huston 1994, Spies and Turner 1999), and in part explain why diversity tends to be greatest with intermediate levels of disturbance (Connell 1978). Managing for appropriate levels of disturbance may be especially important for maintaining biological diversity and ecosystem function in disturbance-adapted ecosystems of the Klamath Network parks, such as oak and pine woodlands, riparian zones, and intertidal zones. Disturbance is also a key factor in many exotic species invasions (Appendix I, exotic species threats). Because disturbance is such a major factor shaping ecosystems and it has much potential for being altered by human activities, it will likely figure prominently in monitoring protocols.

Here, we describe natural disturbances for the major ecosystem types. Anthropogenic disturbances are described in section 1.6:

Aquatic Ecosystems

<u>Marine Ecosystems:</u> The coastal environments of Redwood National and State Parks endure dynamics that span a range of spatial and temporal scales. These processes range from the constant ebb and flow of tides and currents and the annual assault of winter storms and waves, to episodic phenomena such as earthquakes, rockslides, and tsunamis.

The relative importance of these factors varies sharply across the gradient from shore to sea. Along the strand or upper intertidal zone, inundation, desiccation, and the battering of waves and rafted debris (logs) create a unique and often hostile template where aquatic and terrestrial life forms interface. In the middle intertidal zone, inundation is more reliable and the diversity of aquatic organisms increases greatly. Still, the powerful effects of waves and tidal currents strongly govern the spatial and temporal patterns of species abundances in the intertidal zone.

Within the subtidal zone, stability in physical and biological conditions increases greatly, with disruption of biological activity becoming more irregular and episodic. Disturbances such as large storms, extreme low tides, or more episodic phenomena that affect the larger structural components of the marine ecosystem (for example, the kelp forests) are also likely to have important effects on many other organisms.

Lake and Pond (Lentic) Ecosystems: Although comparatively less dynamic than stream ecosystems, lakes, and ponds are subject to a range of natural disturbances. Near shores, wave action results in differences in the flora and fauna populations on the windward vs. leeward shores and convex vs. concave shorelines. Seasonal and year-to-year variation in climate can substantially change shoreline elevation and consequently affect the flora and fauna of entire lakes or littoral zones. These fluctuations can be substantial. Crater Lake, by far the largest and most stable lake in the network, has experienced fluctuations in surface elevation of over five meters (Redmond 1990). A number of the shallower lakes and ponds in Lassen Volcanic National Park dry up entirely during extended droughts (Arnold 2004). Whiskeytown Reservoir is drawn down 3 m (12 feet) each fall. Most of the natural lakes and ponds in the Klamath Network occur at higher elevations where small lakes and ponds freeze over for much of the winter (due to its exceptional depth and volume, Crater Lake rarely freezes). The ice in lakes and ponds is typically superficial, but anchor ice probably forms at least occasionally in the shallower lakes of Lassen Volcanic National Park. Geothermal influences have been noted in water column profiles of Crater Lake (Collier et al. 1990), but the effects of these processes on biological communities are presently unknown.

Streams and Other Flowing Waters: The parks of the Klamath Network contain streams that range from snowmelt rivulets to the Klamath River. Along the river continuum (Vannote et al. 1980) from headwater streams toward larger streams and rivers, there is a change in the nature and importance of disturbances (Montgomery 1999). Streams are coupled to the dynamics of the terrestrial landscape, especially in headwater environments. Fires and associated debris flows, mass wasting, and large wood entrainment form infrequent, but important disturbances (Montgomery 1999). As stream size increases, longer, more powerful floods shape and impact the riparian environment and create conditions that may lead to stream channel migration (Vannote et al. 1980). Larger rivers have more stable conditions and permit the persistence of larger, longer-lived aquatic fauna. Along the same continuum, changes in the environment through which the stream flows (i.e., climatic and geologic setting) exert effects. At higher elevations, ice formation and avalanches may constitute important disturbances in stream courses. Occasional stream heating may be sufficient to act as a disturbance at low

elevations. In summary, the disturbance regime of the stream environment is complex, multi-faceted, and spatially variable.

Maintaining the appropriate disturbance regime for diversity is particularly challenging in stream systems. In degraded watersheds and fish-bearing streams of Klamath parks, limitation of sedimentation is a common management goal. Yet, we know that some degree of disturbance is essential to the maintenance of biological diversity (Huston 1979, Nilsson et al. 1989, Sarr et al. 2005). It is also clear that species groups in riparian forests differ in their responses to disturbance. Studies of aquatic macroinvertebrates show that as a whole they are highly mobile and resilient to brief mechanical or chemical disturbances (Lamberti et al. 1991). The effects of such disturbances on other less mobile groups (e.g., amphibians and salmonid fishes) appear to be more severe (Sarr et al. 2005). Moreover, the nature and duration of disturbance appears to be very important, with varying effects across taxa. For example, aquatic macroinvertebrate communities and fish are strongly impacted by protracted or repeated desiccation, whereas amphibians may survive such episodes and flourish in the absence of fish predation.

Most streams in the Klamath Network parks are low order, high gradient streams that are closely tied to watershed characteristics through which they flow. Changes in fire regimes and impact from roads are likely to impact water quality and the resident and migratory stream biota in these systems (reviewed in Sarr et al. 2005). However, infrequent severe fire was probably an important mechanism for periodically providing a flush of sediment and large wood to the stream systems of the parks (Naiman et al. 1992, May and Gresswell 2003). A more-complete characterization of the natural disturbance regimes of lotic environments would be a valuable foundation upon which to base long-term monitoring.

Terrestrial Ecosystems



Eruption of Mt. Lassen

Large, infrequent landscape disturbances such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes, and tsunamis have been historically important in the Klamath Region. The region is home to active volcanoes such as Mt. Lassen, which can erupt episodically and redefine the physical environment of affected areas. Mt. Lassen last erupted in 1917 (Strong 1973). Earthquakes are a significant feature in the coastal region due to the proximity of the San Andreas Fault, just offshore. Earthquake disturbance can lead to extensive landslides. Both earthquakes and associated submarine landslides may trigger tsunamis. Tsunamis affect coastlines, such as at Redwood National and State Parks, and may flood areas

many meters above sea level. The last substantial tsunami that affected the northern California Coast occurred in 1964, although stratigraphic studies of lagoon sediments demonstrate a history of these events along the coast of Redwood.

Fire can also be a landscape-scale disturbance in the Klamath Region. Fire is such an important disturbance that the ecology of most terrestrial ecosystems cannot be understood apart from it (Bond and van Wilgen 1996). The Klamath region has the vegetation, climate, and lightning ignitions for active and dynamic natural fire regimes. These affect too many ecosystem conditions to describe here. Instead, we present a summary of what is presently known about fire regimes in the Klamath region and the considerable gaps in our understanding (see also Appendix D). Whittaker (1960) summarized the importance of fire to forest vegetation in the region stretching from Redwood National and State Parks to east of Oregon Caves. He concluded that the forest vegetation "may be regarded as a fire-adapted vegetation of a summer-dry climate, in which fires of varying frequencies and intensities and varying sources—white man, Amerind, and lightning have for a very long time been part of its



Jennifer Gibson using a drip torch during burnout operations associated with wildfire in Whiskeytown.

environment.... It may be understood in this case that the climax, or fire-climax, condition embodies a degree of population instability and irregularity resulting from fires affecting different areas in a patch-wise fashion at irregular intervals." Such variation allows the coexistence of more habitat types and species than would be possible with a fire regime that is relatively homogeneous in space and time. For example, a regime of relatively frequent fire may eliminate the closed-cone knobcone pine (*Pinus attenuata*) and non-sprouting shrubs.

For many vegetation types (for example, grasslands, chaparral, and high elevation forests), fire is stand-replacing, and leaves no record of its frequency. Fire frequency in adjacent vegetation for which there may be estimates may or may not be similar. In addition, tree ring records do not describe past patterns of patchiness created by fire. Thus, Appendix D cannot provide descriptions of patch size or other landscape metrics to describe how mixed- or high-severity fire regimes have structured portions of the Klamath landscape. Complicating matters is the non-equilibrium nature of fire regimes. They have changed constantly throughout the Holocene in the Klamath region (Whitlock et al. 2003). The presettlement Little Ice Age climate has now been replaced by warmer climate associated with fires of greater consequence (Stephenson et al. 1991, Meyer and Pierce 2003). Monitoring plans must be designed with the anticipation that aspects of fire regimes will change, and an acceptable range of variability (Parrish et al. 2003) needs to be defined.

Other sources of disturbance that can open gaps in the forest canopy may be as important as those described above, in terms of affected area over time. These include wind,

disease, and insect agents. Gaps in upslope forests are created at rates ranging from 0.2 to 2 percent of a stand per year, which is equivalent to a rotation period of 50-500 years (Runkle 1985, Spies et al. 1990). Gaps may cover 5-30 percent of a forest area at any given time. Such disturbances can be important for biodiversity (Sarr et al. 2005). Wind disturbances also open large patches in forests (Hansen and Rotella 1999, Stinton et al. 2000). Climate, landform, stand conditions, disease, and other disturbances, including timber harvest, will increase the frequency of windthrow events. For example, in the western Cascades, Stinton et al. (2000) found that 10 percent of a landscape was affected by windthrow from 1890 through the late 1990s, but less area was affected per year prior to the onset of timber harvest.

Subterranean Ecosystems

Caves are generally stable environments when compared with surface ecosystems, often showing remarkable consistency in temperature and humidity from day to day and year to year. This stability creates conditions for a highly specialized fauna. However, disturbances due to rock falls and flooding of subterranean streams due provide some temporal variability. As one moves closer to the cave mouth, conditions become more variable and may be affected directly or indirectly by surface disturbances. Cave environments are very sensitive to anthropogenic disturbances as described in the following section.

1.6 Human Effects on Park Ecosystems

A. Historical Human Effects in the Klamath Network Parks

Since humans play such large roles for both good and ill in National Parks, we must incorporate human desires, needs, and effects into park monitoring. Although scientists are often inclined to view humans as a source of threats to ecosystems, humans have likely played a role in the ecology of the Klamath parks for millennia. Nearly all the parks of the Klamath Network provided critical resources or ceremonial sites for Native Americans and were often subject to their management practices. For example, aboriginal burning of the prairies and oak savannas of the Bald Hills in Redwood are believed to have been critical for the development of the relatively open habitat currently existing there. Although native peoples apparently avoided Crater Lake itself, they gathered in large numbers at Huckleberry Mountain just west of the lake (York and Duer 2002). Hunting and gathering are still practiced by the Klamath and Yurok Tribes in the Klamath parks. Relationships with native peoples and preservation of cultural sites are central features of cultural resource programs in all the parks.

Society's attitude towards the parks has changed drastically from the boosterism in the early 20th century to a focus on conservation today (Sellars 1997). Nonetheless, active use of the parks for recreation and education are fundamental to the mission of the parks in the network. Maintaining the quality of the visitor experience in the parks is a key management concern.

Most of the fundamental threats to parks originate from humans, directly or indirectly, and managers must have accurate information to gauge the effects of management. The following subsection briefly discusses some key human threats to the ecosystem identified for the Klamath Network parks.

B. Ecosystem Threats in the Klamath Network

Non-Native Species

Non-native invasions are a major concern to the National Park Service and to society as a whole because their invasion can potentially disrupt all ecological processes (Mack et al. 2000). All aspects of ecological integrity may be negatively affected when non-native species invade. Their presence, even in limited numbers, affects natural values and historic scenes. The National Park System has long been concerned about non-native species, and has developed management guidance in a number of documents (summarized on the NPS invasive species monitoring resource website located on the world wide web at http://www1.nature.nps.gov/biology/invasivespecies/).

While it is not possible to describe succinctly all the threats imposed by non-native species to the Klamath Network parks, we have summarized these threats in this document (Appendix I). The biggest threat posed by invasive non-natives is disruption of entire ecosystems (Mack et al. 2000). Individual species may also be decimated by non-native pathogens, such as occurred with the American chestnut in the eastern United States. Both of these kinds of concerns are present in the Klamath Network.

Non-native plants: These are consistently ranked among the highest priorities for biological inventory in the Klamath Network parks (Acker et al. 2002). Human manipulations of the parks' environments, especially low-elevation parks such as Redwood and Whiskeytown, have lead to high levels of invasion by non-native plant species. As these plants become strongly dominant, they can alter ecosystem integrity and function by greatly diminishing the abundance of native species (Bossard et al. 2000). An over abundance of invasive non-native annual grasses such as cheatgrass are particular threats because their invasion can be facilitated by positive feedback with fire (Mack and D'Antonio 1998). In general, disturbances favor the establishment of invasive non-native plants (Rejmanek 1989, Hobbs 1991). The combination of disturbance and non-native "propagule pressure" is a very strong predictor of landscape susceptibility to invasion (Keeley et al. 2003).

Non-native fauna: The threat of non-native fauna appears to be less serious than that of plants at this time. However, the bullfrog (*Rana catesbeiana*) occurs in all parks except Crater Lake and Lava Beds and is one of the chief non-native concerns. The bullfrog has a reputation for preying on, and eventually completely displacing, native amphibians and fish. Most bodies of water in the network also contain non-native fish, mostly because of purposeful introductions long ago.

Non-native bird species have expanded into the network. Baseline information on the distribution and abundance of these species, and their effect on native bird species in the parks is lacking. In general, as with plants, the worst problems are expected at lower elevations. The Brown-headed Cowbird (*Molothrus ater*), Starling (*Sturnus vulgaris*) and Wild Turkeys (*Meleagris gallopalo*) are the most conspicuous interlopers. The Barred Owl (*Strix varia*) is a relatively recent arrival because of a range expansion that may be facilitated by the opening of forests.



Bullfrogs (*Rana catesbiana*), a highly invasive exotic animal.

Mammals appear to be less of a problem than the above faunal groups. Most non-native mammals are associated with human-dominated areas. Feral pigs (*Sus scrofa*) could become a serious problem where oaks are important (e.g. Little Bald Hills and Whiskeytown). Similarly, there may be serious consequences if several terrestrial and aquatic invertebrates, such as non-native crawfish, invade Network ecosystems.

Non-native pathogens: There are two ongoing exotic pathogen epidemics in the parks that are severely impacting native species: Port Orford cedar root rot, caused by the water mold *Phytophthora lateralis*, and white pine blister rust, caused by the fungus *Cronartium ribicola*. Both the cedar and at least one white pine (Whitebark pine, *Pinus albicaulis*) that are threatened by these pathogens provide keystone ecosystem functions. Unfortunately, there is another emerging epidemic of concern nearby, Sudden Oak Death (*Phytopthora ramorum*) that also affects species that provide keystone functions, oaks and especially tanoak, which provide acorns that sustain much of their associated wildlife. The ecology of these diseases, and its implications for monitoring their effects on park ecosystems, are described in Appendix I.

One factor that helps slow the spread of Sudden Oak Death appears to be fire. Moritz and Odion (2005) have documented a striking, highly significant absence of the disease in areas that have burned in recent decades. The relationship is not caused by biased monitoring for the disease away from burns, but instead appears to be related to nutrient and chemical changes that occur in the absence of fire to weaken hosts and favor the pathogen. These changes are reversed by fire.

Chytrid fungal diseases first appeared in 1998. They occur worldwide, so the native vs. non-native status is unclear. They are a serious threat to amphibians, causing their flesh to rot.

Fire Suppression

Fire is a profoundly important ecological process in a number of park terrestrial ecosystems, where it affects vegetation and important soil and watershed dynamics.

Because of the warm dry summers, periodic lightning storms, and steep climate gradients, the vegetation of the Klamath Network forest had diverse historic fire regimes that ranged from frequent low-severity fires in drier forests and woodlands to less frequent, but more severe burns in cooler, wetter forests and some chaparral communities. The effects of topography further refine burn patterns allowing high vegetation diversity. Over seventy years of fire suppression have considerably altered the natural fire patterns and processes across the region. Park resource managers want to return natural burning cycles to the parks, but there is great scientific uncertainty associated with restoration of indigenous fire regimes and fuel loadings, as well as the potential interactions between fire and non-native species invasions. Both prescribed and wildland fires can create conditions that promote native plant diversity, but they also favor exotic plant establishment. The combined effects of new competitors and altered fire dynamics may jeopardize the viability of some rare or fire-dependent species. See Appendix D for a more-detailed discussion of fire regimes.

Human/Visitor Use Impacts

Increased visitor use and the associated effects of trampling, roads, and pollution are major concerns in Klamath Network parks. Human and/or visitor uses impact the natural environments of our national parks. Visitors may inadvertently or intentionally pollute or degrade rare habitats and subsequently destroy areas crucial to maintaining viable populations of rare and endangered species. For this reason it is important to identify areas where these types of habitats exist and direct heavy visitor use away from these habitats.

Human disturbance of lentic environments in the Klamath Network includes effects of private and public watercraft, pollutants, and human traffic on shorelines. Motorized watercraft, in particular, cause substantial changes in the turbidity, wave dynamics, and shoreline dynamics of lakes, which impact planktonic communities in the pelagic zone. Chemical spills are also potential disturbances associated with boating.

Whiskeytown Reservoir presents a unique challenge for park managers. It forms a biologically rich lentic environment where a lotic environment formerly existed. As a National Recreation Area, its managers are charged with accommodating the human uses of the reservoir. However, there is no baseline of biological integrity to maintain in this unnatural feature; the lake pool level is managed by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

Disturbances from human foot traffic, changes in atmospheric conditions from in-cave structures or human breathing, rerouting of water or air flow, and disruptions resulting from the behavior of cave fauna (e.g. bat roosts or hibernacula) are a concern in such stable environments as the karst caves at Oregon Caves and the lava tubes at Lava Beds. Larger scale human influences include purported effects of fire suppression on water flow, and the effects of climate change on cave microclimates and water balance (Chapter 2).

Tide-pool habitats have also been identified as resources particularly sensitive to visitor use and there is concern that ecological integrity of these environments has diminished at

Redwood. Another key visitor impact that has been identified is the disruption of marine mammal behavior and nesting seabirds by watercraft such as kayaks at Redwood. In the more remote areas of the parks, effects are more localized, but can be severe. With increasing visitation, opportunities for encounters between humans and wildlife are more likely. Information on mountain lion (*Felis concolor*) or black bear (*Ursus americanus*) sightings are of rising concern.

Degraded Habitats

The Klamath parks have been impacted by past and present human activities to varying degrees. Degraded sites in the parks include roads, campgrounds, areas of past mining (with associated mercury contamination and acid mine drainage), harvested areas, drained wetlands, a defunct downhill ski area, river impoundment, and residue from past cave development. The effects of these legacies on native biodiversity are varied and largely unknown. The desire to restore formerly degraded habitat, where possible, is a common theme.

Transboundary Issues

Since most of the parks in the network are small to moderate in size, they are especially vulnerable to outside influences. Timber harvest outside park boundaries is believed to influence geophysical processes and the viability of aquatic organisms in parks downstream. Pathogens borne on logging equipment in the surrounding national forest pose a threat to the Port Orford cedar stands of Oregon Caves. In high elevation parks, such as Lassen and Crater Lake, species such as elk (*Cervus elaphus*) may migrate to lower elevations in winter and be affected from interaction with humans or livestock on private land. Trespassing cattle, off-highway vehicles (OHVs), and snowmobiles occasionally enter parks and affect ecosystems in various ways.

More diffuse effects, such as air pollution, may also pose as yet unforeseen threats to park biodiversity. Most of the park units within the Klamath Network are distant from major cities and pollution sources, but they can still experience poor air quality from pollutants such as ozone, nitrogen oxides, sulfur dioxide, volatile organic compounds, particulate matter, and toxics on occasion. Detrimental effects of pollution have been noted in the Sierra Nevada, and may increasingly threaten as urbanization proceeds in the Rogue and Sacramento valleys. Lassen receives emissions from the Sacramento Valley Air Basin. Monitoring activities have revealed foliar symptoms of ozone injury to both Ponderosa and Jeffrey pine, and recent trends show that ozone levels are increasing in the park. A recent air quality report by the NPS (2002) showed significant degradation (at the 0.15 level) in Lassen for two measures of ozone (average daily 1-hr maximum and annual 4th highest 8-hr average) from 1990-1999. Estimates of sulfur and nitrogen wet deposition in the park are well below the minimum levels generally associated with resource impacts; however, the high elevation lakes of Lassen may be more sensitive to acidification than any other aquatic resources in the western parks (Sullivan et al. 2001). Whiskeytown, located adjacent to the city of Redding, California, may also be receiving impacts. No air quality monitoring studies have been conducted within the park, but Air

Atlas estimates from nearby monitors indicate that the park has high levels of ozone, which could impact vegetation in the park (more detailed information about Air Quality issues is included in Appendix H).

Climate Change

Future climate change will have significant impacts for the Klamath Region. Although there is uncertainty as to the exact timing and magnitude of future climate change, there is a growing scientific consensus that climate change is occurring and that human activities are contributing to this change (IPCC 2001, Parmesan 2006). Estimates of global temperature increases for the next century range from 1.4° to 5.8° C, depending on the assumptions that are made about future greenhouse gas emissions, population growth, etc. (Albritton et al. 2001). For the western U.S., general circulation model (GCM) simulations of future climate indicate that temperatures will likely increase in both winter and summer (Giorgi et al. 2001). Precipitation is also simulated to increase in winter, with changes in summer precipitation being less certain. Thus, the Klamath Network region may experience warmer and wetter winters, and warmer summers in the future. Some modeling studies also suggest an increase in the strength of upwelling along the Pacific Coast of the Klamath Network region, which would help to maintain the coastal fogs that currently ameliorate coastal summer temperatures (Snyder et al. 2003). These fogs are considered important for maintaining appropriate climate conditions for the redwoods of Redwood National and State Parks.

The many different potential impacts of climate change have significant management implications for Klamath Network park units. Shifts in the distributions of species attributed to recent climate change have already been identified (e.g., Parmesan and Yohe 2003) and these shifts will continue in the future. Of particular significance to biotic communities is the potential loss of winter freezing temperatures in the Klamath Network region. Freezing temperatures control the distributions of a variety of plant and animal species. Loss of freezing temperatures would not only allow the expansion of certain native and non-native species in the region, but would also allow some insect pests to increase reproduction (Ayres and Lombardero 2000). Disturbance regimes, such as the frequency and magnitude of fire, will also be affected by climate change, with increased summer temperatures potentially increasing fire potential (Flannigan et al. 2000).

Climate change will also affect the hydrologic systems of the Klamath Network region. Combined changes in temperature and precipitation will alter the amount, seasonal timing, and duration of snowpacks and stream flows. These alterations affect both water quality and quantity. Mote (2003) evaluated snow data for the Pacific Northwest and found a decrease in snow water equivalent (i.e., the depth of water equivalent to the weight of the snowpack) related to increases in temperature for the period 1950-2000. A number of studies have also simulated future changes in snowpack and runoff, which indicate future decreases in snow (e.g., Leung et al. 2004) and changes in the timing of snowmelt runoff (e.g., Stewart et al. 2004) for the Klamath Region.

1.7 Monitoring in the Klamath Network

A. Past and Present Monitoring

A comprehensive breakdown of monitoring that has been done and that is ongoing in the Network is provided in Appendix J. A brief summary is provided here.

Air Quality

With the Clean Air Act, Congress established increased protections for 48 national park units designated as Class I areas along with additional measures to protect the remaining park units—Class II areas. The Klamath Network includes four Class I areas (Crater Lake NP, Lassen Volcanic NP, Lava Beds NM, and Redwood NP) and two Class II areas (Oregon Caves NM and Whiskeytown NRA). The majority of NPS air resources monitoring occurs in the Class I parks, while the Class II parks often obtain air quality data from cooperating agencies. The four Class I parks in the Klamath Network all have at least one air quality monitoring station within park boundaries. The two Class II parks (Oregon Caves NM and Whiskeytown NRA) have no within-park air quality monitoring stations. Lassen Volcanic has the most extensive air quality monitoring program in the Network. The history of monitoring at each park unit can be found on the NPS Air Resources webpage: http://www2.nature.nps.gov/air/Monitoring/MonHist/index.cfm. For park units without on-site monitoring, estimates of many air quality parameters can be found in Air Atlas at http://www2.nature.nps.gov/air/Maps/AirAtlas/index.htm. More detailed information on air resources is contained in Appendix H.

Water Quality

In 2003-2004, the Klamath Network began summarizing years of data on water quality of the Klamath Network parks (Appendix F). It is clear that some areas of the Network (e.g. Crater Lake and the Redwood Creek Watershed) have been the focus of intense scientific study for many years, whereas other areas (e.g., lakes at Lassen or the entire Redwood shoreline) have received comparably little study. There is much to be done in terms of basic inventory and establishment of baseline conditions for water quality monitoring. With funding from the NPS Water Resource Division, baseline inventories in Lava Beds, Lassen Volcanic, and Oregon Caves were completed in 2005.

<u>Outstanding Waters</u>: There are no designated Outstanding Resource Waters within the Klamath Network. However, the staff of both the Klamath Network and Crater Lake are in the process of petitioning the Oregon Department of Environmental Quality for designation for Crater Lake.

<u>Protection Areas:</u> The North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board has identified Redwood National Park as a State Water Quality Protection Area, designated by the California State Water Board.

<u>Clean Water Act Section 303d Impaired:</u> There are four listed 303d impaired waters within the Klamath Network. Two of these are located within Redwood National Park (Redwood Creek and the Klamath River) as the result of adjacent upstream land use practices, in particular, the road building and reduced land cover associated with logging. There are two 303d waters in Whiskeytown: Willow Creek (associated with past mining activities) and the designated swim beaches.

The Klamath Network vital signs scoping process incorporated water quality issues. We held separate workshops for marine issues and an aquatic working group at the network vital signs workshop. Consequently, our general monitoring questions and candidate vital signs address various elements of water quality along with more general concerns about aquatic ecosystems. In a similar way, we developed general conceptual models for marine and freshwater lentic and lotic ecosystems (Chapter 2), but not specifically for water quality.

Other Agencies and Institutions

<u>Federal Agencies</u>: As in the rest of the western United States, the USDI Bureau of Land Management (BLM) and the USDA Forest Service act as the major administrators of public lands around the parks. Major BLM programs in California with monitoring components of particular interest to NPS are the noxious weeds, fire management, and special-status-plants programs. In Oregon, they include rangeland health; banding, inventory, and monitoring of Northern Spotted Owls; and watershed-analysis programs.

US Forest Service research stations employ scientists with a strong theoretical and often applied understanding of various aspects of forested ecosystems, who have administered a number of local research projects in the Klamath Region. These projects include manipulative experiments and longer-term studies of individual ecosystem components that may provide baseline data and science-based understanding. In addition, the Forest Information and Analysis program of the agency maintains forest inventory plots in all the Network parks except Oregon Caves.

The Forest and Rangeland Ecosystem Science Center of the US Geological Survey boasts particular expertise in conservation genetics, invasive plants, scientific support for monitoring, herpetofauna, contaminants, wetland ecology, rangeland ecology, and biogeochemistry in the Klamath Region.

The National Resource Conservation Service's mapping and surveys of soils will be valuable to units of the Klamath Network. The Snow Survey Program, which provides mountain-snowpack data and stream flow forecasts for the western United States, may also be used for water-supply management, flood control, climate modeling, recreation, and conservation-planning applications.

The Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP) is the Environmental Protection Agency's most significant monitoring effort. Its goal is to "build the scientific basis, and the local, state, and tribal capacity to monitor for status and trends in the

condition of the Nation's aquatic ecosystems." The value of EMAP for the Klamath Network may lie in its ability to design and modify protocols for multi-scale sampling of aquatic ecosystems, rather than undertake monitoring in or near the parks.

The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (FWS) administers eight National Wildlife Refuges within the vicinity of the Klamath Network (five in California and three in Oregon). A FWS program of particular note for Inventory and Management efforts is the National Wetlands Inventory, the goal of which is to provide "current geospatially referenced information on the status, extent, characteristics and functions of wetland, riparian, deepwater and related aquatic habitats in priority areas to promote the understanding and conservation of these resources."

State Agencies: Oregon Department of Fisheries and Wildlife (ODFW) is the agency responsible for issuing licenses and regulations for game species, in accordance with the status and trends of those species. ODFW's stated mission is "to protect and enhance Oregon's fish and wildlife and their habitats for use and enjoyment by present and future generations." Past and present scientists and administrators at ODFW made significant contributions to a book covering 593 wildlife species and their relationships with the 32 terrestrial, freshwater, and marine habitat types of Oregon and Washington (Johnson and O'Neil 2001).

The California Department of Fish and Game's (CDFG's) stated mission is "to manage California's diverse fish, wildlife, and plant resources, and the habitats upon which they depend, for their ecological values and for their use and enjoyment by the public." By law, the Department has responsibility for periodic monitoring of the state's diverse biological resources to assure their conservation for current and future residents. Monitoring involves not only assessing the status of individual species, but also the status of their habitats. The products produced by DFG appear to verify this commitment, as a search for "monitoring" from the Department's main page produced a listing of 1,317 documents. Of particular interest for the Network is the Department's Resource Assessment Program (CDFG 2001); available at http://www.dfg.ca.gov/habitats/rap/pdf/resassessprogram.pdf).

The California and Oregon State Parks systems (over 270 units in California and 179 units in Oregon) are most similar to National Parks in their enabling legislation. Monitoring within the state park systems is usually performed to ensure the efficacy of a particular management action. Monitoring other than this is generally performed in collaboration with another agency or organization.

Other Organizations: Partners in Flight Breeding Bird Surveys, which involve workers and volunteers of varying levels of experience, occur extensively both in time and space. The Klamath Bird Observatory, based in Ashland, Oregon, conducts bird monitoring in Klamath Network parks and on private and federal lands throughout the region.

The Nature Conservancy's (TNC's) stated mission is "to preserve the plants, animals and natural communities that represent the diversity of life on Earth by protecting the lands

and waters they need to survive." The TNC works to accomplish this goal by purchasing high-integrity landscapes or creating a diversity of conservation agreements (e.g., conservation easements) that balance human needs with long-term conservation of biological resources. A variety of monitoring may take place on these holdings.

B. Identification of Monitoring Concerns and Vital Signs

The identification of vital signs for monitoring ecological integrity of the Klamath Network parks has entailed a number of steps and is an ongoing process. Individual vital signs scoping workshops were initially held for each Park unit prior to formal establishment of the Klamath Network (Appendix G). After the Network was established, three workshops were held in 2004, covering 1) the marine environment at Redwood, 2) the geology and soils, and 3) terrestrial, freshwater aquatic and subterranean ecosystems across the Network. The culmination of all of these efforts was the identification of numerous monitoring questions and associated potential vital signs. These were put into the National Vital Signs Framework and are presented, along with details about the workshops and scoping process, in Appendix G. A summary table of the most common monitoring questions and topics that were raised is presented, also using the national framework categories (Table 1.7).



Table 1.7. Most commonly identified monitoring questions or topics and their associated vital signs in the Klamath Network vital signs identification process.

National Frame	ework	Monitoring Question or Topic	Potential Vital Sign
Level 1	Level 2		
Air and	Air	What are status and trends in wet/dry deposition?	Deposition, S & N,
Climate		What are status and trends in atmospheric pollutants?	particulates (see Appendices F
			and H)
			Pollution (see Appendix G)
			Sensitive species (amphibians
			lichens, plants)
			Snow Chemistry
		What are status and trends in visibility (incl. Light pollution)?	Visibility, Light Pollution
	Weather/		Key phenological events (as
	climate	What is timing and duration of key phenological events?	yet undetermined).
		Are climate associated ecotones changing through time	
		(treeline, other vegetation types)?	Ecotones, (e.g. timberline)
		How do ENSO and climate change affect marine and terrestrial	Many organisms proposed
		organisms?	(see Appendix G)
		Are fog dynamics (amount, inland penetration, etc.) changing?	Fog dynamics (Redwood NP)
		How is sea level changing?	Sea level, Intertidal organisms
		Are ocean temperatures changing?	Sea surface temperature
Geology and	Geomorphology	Have rates, extent, location, or types of erosional and	Erosion and deposition
Soils		depositional processes changed?	processes (see Appendix)
		How is coastal morphology changing?	Nearshore/shoreline processes
	Subsurface	See water quality	
	processes		
	Soil quality	Are we losing topsoil?	Soil integrity (need specifics)
		How is soil fertility changing?	Soil fertility

National Framework		Monitoring Question or Topic	Potential Vital Sign
Water	Hydrology	What is the effusion rate of groundwater into the surface environment? (geothermal)	Groundwater dynamics (geothermal discharge)
		What are ground water changes?	Aquifers (depth volume variability)
	Water Quality	How are changes in water and ice quantity, rates, and quality affecting cave/lava tube erosion, deposition, and biota?	Subterranean (cave, lava tube) water/ice quantity and quality
		What is the status and trend of point source pollution?	Point source pollutants (oil and plastic materials in marine environments).
			Seabirds, marine mammals.
		What are status and trends in non point source pollution?	Non-point source pollutants
		What are status and trends in permanent and ephemeral aquatic	Aquatic organisms
		communities?	(macroinverts., fish, amphibs.)
D. 1 . 1	.	What are the status and trends in turbidity (marine/estuary)?	Turbidity
Biological	Invasive species	How are invasive species affecting aquatic and terrestrial	Fuels and fire
Integrity		ecosystem processes?	Water levels
		How are invasive species affecting aquatic and terrestrial	Species composition and
		ecosystem species' abundance and composition?	relative abundance
		How are invasive species abundance, composition, and distribution changing?	Invasive species
	Infestations and	What are parasite/pathogen trends in terrestrial and marine	Parasites/pathogens,
	Disease	systems (especially non-native pathogens)?	especially non-native
	Focal Species or Communities	What are long term trends, abundance, distribution, demographics, and especially productivity, of focal species/	Riparian communities
	3011111311113	communities?	Whitebark pine forests
		What are wildlife and plant demographic trends in focal	Redwood forests
		species?	Old growth forests
			Butterflies

National Framework		Monitoring Question or Topic	Potential Vital Sign
			Landbirds
			Waterbirds
			Biocontrol insects
			Small mammal communities
			Herpetofauna
			Large carnivores, megafauna,
			megaflora
			Habitat specialists/obligates
			Pika metapopulations
			Ungulates
			Bryophytes
			Lichens
			Pollinators (invert. and vert.)
			Rare species
			Invertebrates/algae
			communities and/or
			populations
			Common Murre colonies
			Marine mammals
			Bull kelp
Human Use	Point Source	What are status and trends in Fishing boats/lights, flyovers, and	Machine use in or near parks
	Effects	snowmobile use (large machines affecting parks)?	Wildlife migration
			Marine mammal/seabird
			disruption
		What are effects of mining, geothermal exploration and	Water quality,
		development?	bioaccumulation

National Frame	work	Monitoring Question or Topic	Potential Vital Sign
Non-point Source Effects		What are the trends and effects due to illegal harvesting of park resources (e.g. elk, mushrooms, plants, herps, forest products, salmonids), including commercial fishing in adjacent waters?	All items listed in this monitoring question
	Visitor Use	What are trends in visitor and recreation use?	Visitor and recreation use
		What are status and trends in watercraft use?	Marine mammal and sea bird behavior
		What are status and trends in sensitive habitat use?	Tide-pools, caves
Ecosystem Pattern and	Disturbance	What are the natural disturbance regimes and how are they changing over time and what is the ecological response?	Fire and other landscape scale disturbances
Process	Land use and	How is land use and land cover changing in and around parks?	Land cover/use, roads
	cover	What is the connectivity of old growth forests?	Forest fragmentation and affected wildlife
		What are status and trends of woody debris?	Woody debris, snags
How are the riparian communities changing		How are the riparian communities changing?	Channel morphology
			Woody debris
			Plant and animal composition

Chapter 2: Conceptual Ecological Models

2.1 Introduction

Service-wide guidelines for establishing Inventory and Monitoring Network Vital Signs Monitoring Programs in the National Parks call for the development of conceptual models that "provide a summary of the understanding of the park ecosystem." The conceptual models and the process of developing them are considered key steps meant to improve understanding of and communication about complex systems and to assist in designing a vital signs monitoring program (Gross 2003). Conceptual models can also help provide consistent principles around which the vital signs report can be organized.

A conceptual model is a visual or narrative summary that illustrates the important components of the ecosystem and the interactions among them. Effective conceptual models help scientists convey complex principles with impact and economy, and promote integration and communication among scientists and managers from different disciplines. Development of conceptual models also helps the designers of a monitoring program better understand how the many components of ecological systems interact. This chapter describes the Klamath Network process for developing conceptual models to guide this Vital Signs Monitoring Plan. The goal of these conceptual models is to explain our understanding of the drivers of change in park ecosystems so that the vitality of these systems can be monitored.

2.2 A Conceptual Basis for Monitoring in the Klamath Network

Monitoring can inform many areas of land management, providing practical details relevant to park operations as well as critical information for the conservation of biological diversity (Noon et al. 1999, Busch and Trexler 2002). The need for a conceptually sound and quantitative basis for gauging the status and trends of park ecosystems has been proposed by numerous internal and external reviews of the National Park Service policies and actions (National Academy of Sciences 1992, reviewed in Sellars 1997, and Appendix B). This chapter of our report aims to communicate such a conceptual foundation for identifying vital signs of the ecosystems of the Klamath Network.

A. Ecosystem Structure, Composition, and Function

Franklin et al. (1981) recognized three primary characteristics of ecosystems: composition, structure, and function. These can be used to assess the ecological integrity of Park ecosystems. *Composition* is the array of ecosystem components (genes, species, populations, special habitats, and so on). *Structure* refers to the spatial arrangement of physical components, such as canopy structure, or the arrays of corridors for species movement. *Function* refers to the many processes that ecosystems require and provide through time, such as nutrient cycling, carbon cycling, hydrologic cycling, etc. Noss (1990) modified this classification to describe potential indicators of biodiversity and created a conceptual model illustrating how composition, structure, and function might be expressed across a hierarchy of spatial scales and biological organization (Figure 2.1).

In the Klamath Network parks, the National Park Service protects and manages landscapes with exceptional levels of species richness, endemism, and rarity (DellaSala et al. 1999, Section 1.4). A major management challenge is to maintain this biodiversity

through time. The three-part framework describes fundamental dimensions of the system at all scales. It therefore provides a comprehensive framework for identifying the vital signs of a biophysical system (Chapter 3).

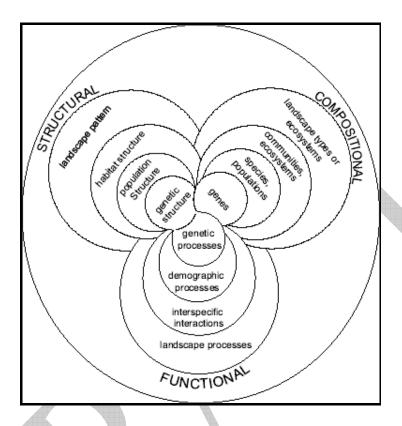


Figure 2.1. Conceptual model illustrating multi-scale hierarchy of biodiversity indicators that describe composition, structure, and function at each level of scale and biological organization (from Noss 1990).

B. Multiscale and Multispecies Integration

A monitoring program must also have an approach to measuring park phenomena and relevant issues that spans multiple scales. A growing body of ecological literature illustrates that the relative importance of different controls on species abundance and diversity varies across spatial and temporal scales (Holling 1992, Whittaker et al. 2001, Bestelmeyer et al. 2003, Sarr et al. 2005). Therefore, monitoring must provide information across the range of spatial and temporal scales that is relevant for the organisms present.

Assessment of human impacts also requires a multiscale perspective and a corresponding diversity in sampling approaches. Impacts to specific habitats may require more focused attention than is likely to occur in a park or network-wide sampling grid. The impact of larger scale influences, such as effects of climate change, will require partnership and information sharing with regional, national, or international partners.

Monitoring must also effectively integrate information across species, life forms, and ecosystems. Approaches that monitor the status and trends in structure and variation of biota in terms of gradients on three levels (environmental factors, species populations, and characteristics of communities (Whittaker 1967)) may be needed to determine trends in ecological integrity of Park ecosystems. Such approaches place greater emphasis on the kinds and degrees of relationships among different organisms in a community than more taxon specific approaches. In particular, we suggest that monitoring multiple species or attributes together may track changes in ecosystem structure, function, and composition better than single entities. Gradients along which these assemblages change may be apparent, as shown in the conceptual models presented in this chapter. In addition, multivariate approaches for the comparison of samples may also cause gradient relationships to emerge from the data. How these relationships change over time may be a vital sign of ecosystem integrity.

2.3 Conceptual Model Development

The conceptual modeling process in the Klamath Network involved review of relevant literature within and outside the National Park Service, active discussion among the Klamath Network staff, consultation with scientific staff at the National Inventory and Monitoring office, and solicitation of comments on draft models in several scoping meetings (see Appendix G). The Klamath Network approach to conceptual models first involved a survey of models that were prepared by other networks. We identified two basic strategies for modeling complex systems that are affected by human activities: 1) incorporate effects of humans directly from the outset (stressor-based models); and 2) develop models based on a biophysical understanding of the system without human impacts (ecosystem-process models) first, and then incorporate human impacts. We chose the latter approach initially.

We first considered developing conceptual models for each major ecosystem type in the network, but dismissed that approach when it became apparent that it would produce a large, redundant family of conceptual models. Rather than approach the ecosystems as discrete pieces, we chose to portray them as broader ecosystem domains (marine, freshwater aquatic, terrestrial, and subterranean), structured into ecological zones by environmental gradients. We also debated the issue of finding consistent levels of detail in the various conceptual models. We addressed this problem by constructing a hierarchical family of models that range from broad and comprehensive to focused and detailed. This approach provides general models for communication with non-scientists, yet it allows us to construct submodels with as much detail as needed for a particular problem or a highly specialized audience.

Of the conceptual models we reviewed, we were particularly impressed with those prepared by the Southwest Alaska Network (SWAN) (Bennett et al. 2003). Their models were hierarchical, visually appealing, interesting, and covered a suite of broad concepts. In their Phase I Report, SWAN introduced the concept of a holistic conceptual model, with submodels that describe specific elements in detail. We incorporated three major organizing features and design elements from the SWAN conceptual models: 1) the use

of the hierarchical structure employing one holistic model with a family of submodels, 2) a broad classification of park ecosystems (e.g., marine, freshwater aquatic, terrestrial, and subterranean), and 3) an attempt to create visually-engaging models.

As we developed our models, we worked from the general to specific. We began by considering the primary environmental influences on ecosystem structure, composition, and function in the Klamath Network parks. The holistic conceptual model is a simple diagram portraying these influences. Submodels were simply components of the holistic model (ecosystems or major influences) expanded into greater detail. The hierarchical, nested set of models developed for the Klamath Network includes: 1) a holistic conceptual model of ecosystem domains showing the major influences on park ecosystems and 2) submodels of park ecosystems, illustrating the influences in greater detail.

2.4 Conceptual Models

A. A Holistic Conceptual Model of Influences on Klamath Park Ecosystems

Our initial Holistic Conceptual Model described the major abiotic, biotic, dynamic, and historic dimensions of the environment and the driving forces shaping park ecosystems and the landscapes in which they occur. These factors determine the structure, function, and composition of park ecosystems. Human influences were originally thought to impinge upon this biophysical system from outside. After discussion with park staff, we removed historic influences and moved human influences within the holistic model, making explicit our view that humans are an integrated part of the biophysical environments in the Klamath Network parks. We then divided park ecosystems into four major domains: marine, freshwater aquatic, terrestrial, and subterranean. It was not our intent to use a definitive ecosystem classification for the model. Rather, we wished to portray four major domains that were intuitive and that will allow later subdivision, as needed. To spur our thinking in the vital signs workshop, we encouraged participants to consider the effects of major influences on ecosystem *structure*, *composition*, and *function*. The final Holistic Conceptual Model is the outcome of these discussions (Figure 2.2).

In the following section, we provide a short justification for each of the major components of the Holistic Conceptual Model. We then present conceptual submodels illustrating the influence of each major component in the park ecosystem domains. This results in three sets of conceptual submodels: 1) models of ecological zonation along gradients, (2) models of natural ecosystem dynamics, and (3) models of human-caused influences on ecosystem dynamics.

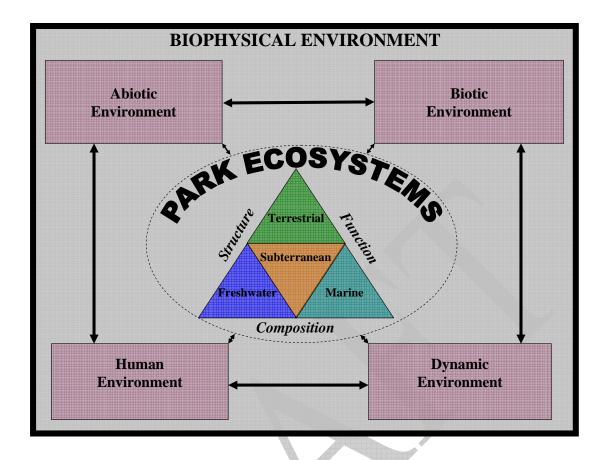


Figure 2.2. A Holistic Conceptual Model of influences on Klamath park ecosystems.

B. Assumptions and Approach to Submodels

Gradient Models

The Klamath region shows great geographic complexity. Much of this variation arises from ecological zonation across the steep abiotic gradients that characterize the region. Because the landscape gradients in the Klamath region are so pronounced (Whittaker 1960), and are such strong drivers of ecosystem patterns and processes, we assumed that this gradient structure would provide an ideal background upon which to conceptually portray biotic variation across the terrestrial landscape. There are also strong gradients and pronounced zonation in marine and freshwater ecosystems, underscoring the generality of the gradient model approach.

Zonation has long been recognized in terrestrial ecosystems (Merriam and Steineger 1890) and is evident in aquatic and wetland ecosystems as well (Ricketts and Calvin 1939, Vannote et al. 1980, Mitsch and Gosselink 2000). We employ the zonation concept in the first set of ecosystem submodels for practical reasons. First, the striking nature of spatial patterns of the Klamath region suggests that they can be linked to known biophysical drivers such as climate, geology, and wave action, which form the most fundamental controls on ecosystem processes and the living organisms they support.

Second, the number of individual ecosystem types in the Klamath Network has never been determined, and it would likely yield too many systems to describe in this report, with many of the ecosystems largely redundant in gradients or dynamics. Finally, the gradient models are fairly simple and straightforward so that they may be more engaging.

Dynamic Models

A wide range of disturbance processes structure the aquatic, terrestrial, and subterranean ecosystems of the Klamath Network parks. Landscape disturbances are highly variable and should probably be viewed as frequency distributions with general statistical properties, such as mean sizes, recurrence intervals, and intensities, but with a characteristic range in these properties. Disturbance dynamics are fundamental to the function of ecosystems and the diversity of life they contain. Our conceptual models illustrate the major dynamic processes structuring each of the major ecosystem types and the ecological zones within them.

The Human Effects Models

Although our Holistic Conceptual Model clearly includes humans as part of the biophysical environment of the Klamath parks, we developed a series of human effects models for each major ecosystem to explore how human stressors can impact park ecosystems. We portray these relationships in one overview model and several submodels. All the models distinguish far-field influences that propagate across entire landscapes (e.g., air pollution, climate change, fire suppression) from near-field influences that cause more local, but potentially cumulative impacts (e.g., visitor use impacts, local disturbances, point source pollution). In the submodels, we portray the major human influences, the intermediate linking mechanisms or processes (e.g., abiotic and biotic gradients, ecosystem processes) that drive ecosystem structure, function, and composition, and several focal elements of recognized value to the parks.

C. Major Ecosystem Domains of the Klamath Network

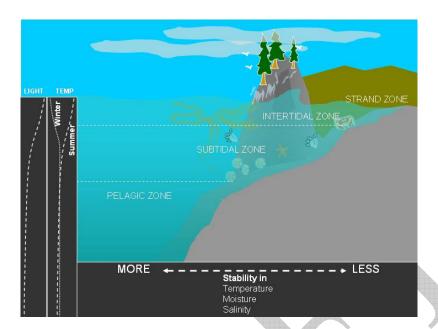
In this subsection, we outline the major ecosystem domains of the Klamath Network parks. In each case, we discuss the fundamental gradients that shape the biophysical environment, then discuss natural (intrinsic) ecosystem dynamics.

Marine Ecosystems

Near-shore marine environments have some of the sharpest zonation known and described in ecology (Ricketts and Calvin 1939, Bakker 1971). Along the gradient from dry sand to deep water, there are several major zones. All classifications of nearshore ecosystems recognize the sharp decline in the variability of the environment, in the duration of desiccation, and in light availability. Ricketts and Calvin (1939) also emphasized the importance of wave shock as a fundamental control on the richness and distribution of coastal organisms. The substratum type complicates these gradients of environmental conditions, with rocky and sandy substrates creating relatively distinct living environments. A conceptual model of the marine environment (Figure 2.3a) illustrates the gradients in stability and changes in abiotic conditions with depth.

Across the ecological zones from strand to sea, there are important changes in ecosystem dynamics, especially the type and intensity of disturbance (Figure 2.3b). Near the shoreline, wave action is a constant force shaping species distributions. Storm waves occur each year, but especially powerful storm waves can strongly influence the intertidal zone. These disturbances can be particularly forceful when aided by driftwood or other debris. Extreme tides can also form disturbances through atypically long periods of inundation or desiccation. Along the northern California coast, tsunamis have occurred periodically, driven by tectonic events, and undoubtedly change abiotic and biotic conditions. Farther from the shoreline, larger scale marine processes, such as upwelling, longshore currents, and seasonal, year-to-year and decadal oscillations in ocean temperatures become primary controls on the distribution and abundance of organisms.

a.



b.

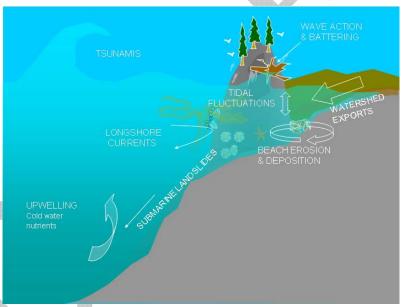


Figure 2.3 a, b. Conceptual model of marine ecosystems, showing a.) major abiotic gradients and ecological zonation (changes in abiotic conditions with increasing depth are portrayed in vertical line graphs), b.) major dynamic processes.

Freshwater Ecosystems

Zonation of lakes is similar to the coastal environment in many ways. The primary gradient in lakes is from the wave-influenced, well-illuminated, and seasonally variable littoral zone to the comparatively stable, but light-poor depths (Figure 2.4a). The depth of the lake and nature of the shoreline also strongly influence the attributes of the water column and the organisms present. Shallow lakes, such as many in Lassen, have well

developed littoral zones with high productivity, extensive wetland development, and tight coupling to the surrounding terrestrial environment. In deeper lakes, such as Crater Lake, open water (pelagic) processes are most important, and productivity is much lower with a very large aphotic (no light penetration) zone.

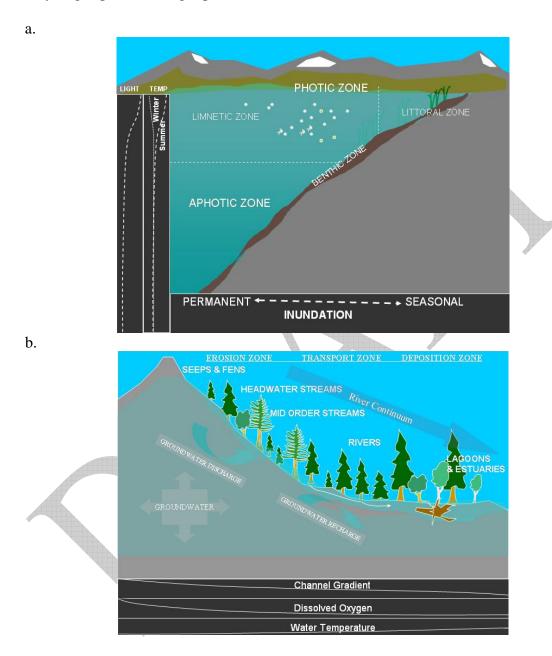


Figure 2.4 a, b. Conceptual model of freshwater ecosystems, showing a.) major abiotic gradients and ecological zonation in lake (lentic) ecosystems, b.) major abiotic gradients in flowing freshwater (lotic) ecosystems showing changes in the channel gradient, dissolved oxygen, and water temperature down the stream. The river continuum refers to the abiotic and biotic changes from headwaters to larger streams (Vannote et al. 1980).

Flowing water (lotic) ecosystems change predictably from headwaters to downstream. The river continuum (Vannote et al. 1980) is an excellent depiction of this pattern that is well expressed in running water environments of the Klamath Network parks (Figure 2.4b). Along the river continuum from headwaters to lowland rivers, there are typically predictable increases in water temperature, declines in dissolved oxygen, decreases in average substrates size, and increases in the proportion of within-stream (autochthonous) production of carbon. These abiotic changes drive changes in aquatic biotic composition along the same gradient.

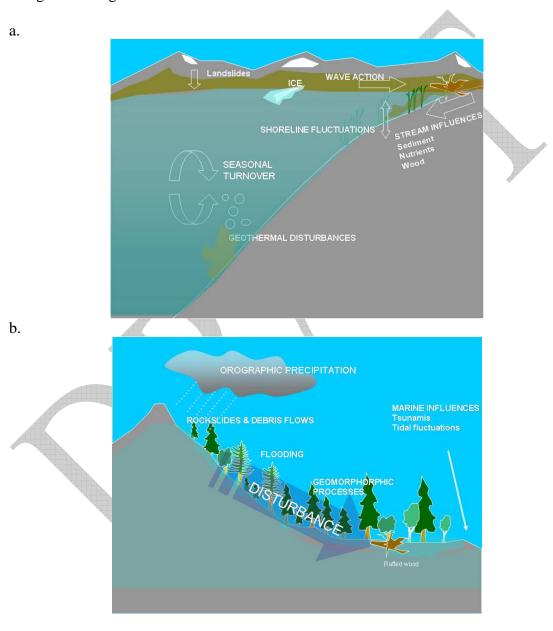


Figure 2.5 a, b. Conceptual model of major dynamic processes in freshwater ecosystems: a.) lake (lentic) ecosystems, b.) flowing freshwater (lotic) ecosystems.

The dynamics of freshwater ecosystems show variation across the major ecological gradients. From the littoral to pelagic zones, major ecological dynamics in lakes shift from wave dynamics and effects of landscape disturbances to seasonal currents that mix the water column (Figure 2.5a). Although they are quite dynamic ecosystems, relatively less of the spatial and temporal variation in lakes fits the definition of disturbance provided by Pickett and White (1985). Seasonal fluctuations in temperature, such as fall turnover, are essentially regenerative processes. So too are the sequential blooms of phytoplankton and zooplankton that drive seasonal shifts in water clarity and nutrient availability. The effects of more-typical disturbances, such as ice movement, wave action, and watershed influences, such as floods and debris flows, are less well understood in the lakes and reservoirs.

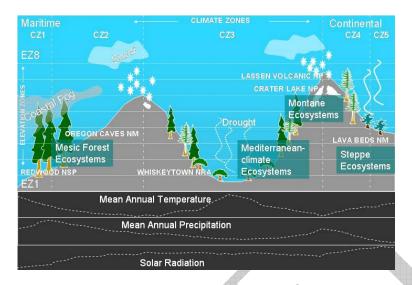
In contrast to lakes, stream ecosystems are particularly dynamic, with stochastic disturbances being primary organizing processes. A host of factors from within and outside the water column can disturb the stream and its riparian corridor (Figure 2.5b), including debris flows, floods, and other geomorphic processes such as channel migration. Although initial conservation efforts sought to minimize deleterious disturbances to streams, a nonequilibrium paradigm (Reeves et al. 1995) proposes that an understanding of watershed and stream disturbances is fundamental to understanding the integrity of these ecosystems.

Terrestrial Ecosystems

The Klamath Network parks encompass landscapes with steep climate gradients associated with proximity to the Pacific Ocean air masses. The decreasing maritime influence from west to east is associated with declines in precipitation, greater ranges in daily and annual temperature, and increases in solar radiation (Figure 2.6a). A preliminary landscape classification for the region (Sarr et al. 2003) recognizes five climate zones and eight elevation zones. Temperatures decline with elevation in all climate zones, with deep snows accumulating above approximately 2,000 m elevation. The coastal climate zone shows a sharp temperature inversion in summer, associated with coastal fogs, so that areas lower than 500 m in elevation are much cooler than corresponding areas in the interior. This unique fog belt strongly coincides with the distribution of coast redwood and the southern extension of many plant species from the Pacific Northwest. Together, the stark abiotic changes in ambient climate and elevation across the network are mirrored in a great variety of vegetation types.

In terrestrial ecosystems, landscape dynamics also show important variation across the region (Figure 2.6b). Windthrow may be the most important disturbance in the moist, storm-battered coastal forests, while fire is the preeminent landscape-scale disturbance at many noncoastal sites (Franklin and Dyrness 1988). The frequency and severity of fire show both temporal and spatial variability, with frequency generally increasing from west to east and from high to low elevations (see Appendix D). Other, finer-scale disturbances, such as local root rot infestations, insect outbreaks, and landslides, are also found in unique vegetation types and topographic positions.

a.



b.



Figure 2.6 a, b. Conceptual models of terrestrial ecosystems, showing: a.) major abiotic and ecological zonation (variation in several major ecological parameters is portrayed in horizontal line graphs; elevation and climate zones are from a draft landscape classification that breaks the region into five climate zones and eight elevation zones), b.) major dynamic processes.

Subterranean Ecosystems

The caves of the Klamath Network parks are spatially structured habitats with clear gradients in light, humidity, airflow, and air chemistry from the cave mouths inward (Figure 2.7a). In general, the variability in the environment declines with increasing

distance into the cave as the cave interior becomes decoupled from daily climate fluctuations. The unique, cool microclimates near cave mouths are known to be important for a number of plant and animal species occurring in Lava Beds National Monument. Such patterns probably also occur in the karst cave system of Oregon Caves.

Processes that occur in caves are fundamental to the development and structure of the cave environment, although they often occur slowly. Groundwater flow, and associated processes of mineral dissolution and accretion, create and maintain karst features. Similarly, seepage and freezing of water are necessary for the formation of ice caves, as are the summer temperature inversions that maintain them.

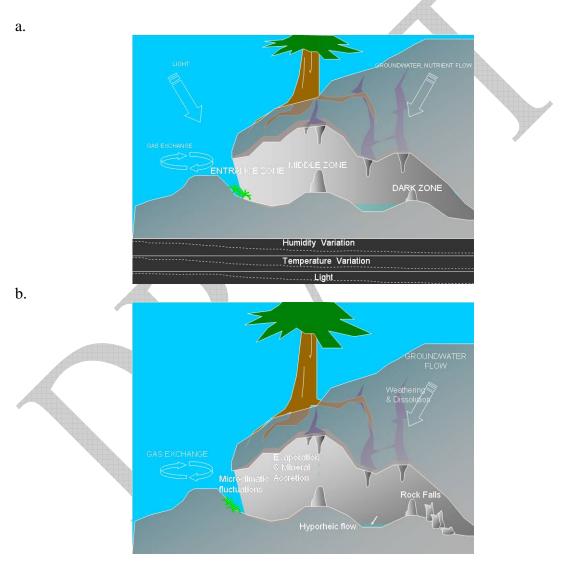


Figure 2.7 a, b. Conceptual models of subterranean ecosystems, showing: a.) major abiotic gradients and zonation (variation in conditions is portrayed in horizontal line graphs). b.) major system dynamics.

Caves appear to be quite stable environments when compared with surface ecosystems, often showing remarkable consistency in temperature and humidity from day to day and year to year. However, disturbances caused by rock falls or the flooding of subterranean streams do provide some temporal variability. As one moves closer to the cave mouth, environmental conditions become more variable and may be affected directly or indirectly by surface disturbances (Figure 2.7b). Viewed on longer time scales, caves ecosystems are highly dynamic, depending upon ongoing hydrogeologic and atmospheric processes.

D. Human Influences on Park Ecosystems

Humans have been elements of the Klamath Network park ecosystems for millennia. Their influences have changed dramatically over that time, with changes in technology, culture, and population densities and park development. Although large parts of several of the parks in the Klamath Network are considered wilderness, the majority of most parks are, in fact, human-dominated ecosystems (Vitousek et al. 1997), and they will continue to be for the foreseeable future.

A central goal of the long-term monitoring program is to detect changes that we suspect are caused by detrimental human actions. Potential sources of harm can come from near-field activities, such as campgrounds, local management actions, or point-source pollution, or from far-field effects, such as off-site pollution, climate change, and introductions of non-native species, that affect all the park ecosystems. Together, these stressors can affect the structure, function, and composition of park ecosystems, endangering their diversity and integrity (Figure 2.8).



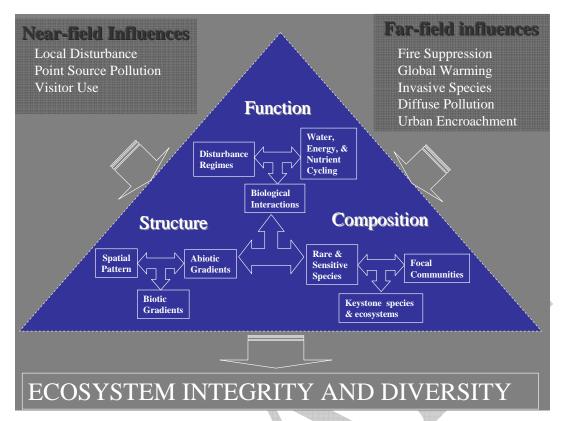


Figure 2.8. Human influences on the structure, function, and composition of park ecosystems.

Human influences on the marine environments of the Klamath Network include far-field factors, such as deepwater fishing, pollution, and disturbance to marine mammals and shorebirds by watercraft and aircraft. Human influences also include local effects of beach recreation, beachcombing, and rock climbing on sea stacks and coastal headlands (Figure 2.9). In addition, material trash (primarily plastic) has become abundant in marine systems. These factors influence the gradients and processes that maintain habitat for focal, keystone, and rare and sensitive coastal species.

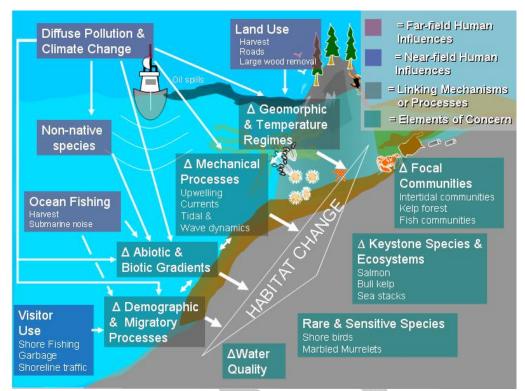
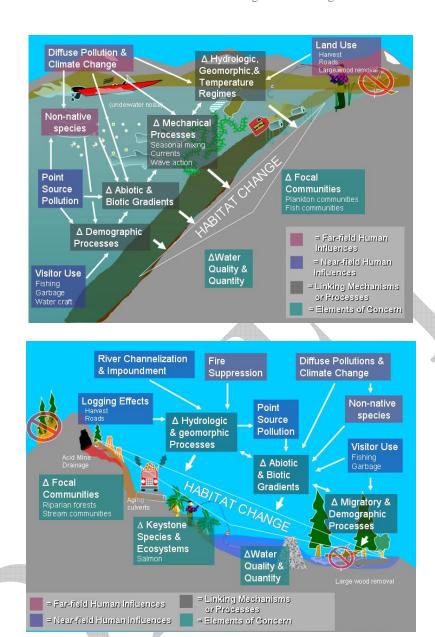


Figure 2.9. Conceptual model of human influences on marine ecosystems.

Recreational use of lakes in the Network is a dominant influence and management objective in all the parks of the Klamath Network (Figure 2.10a. This is especially the case in Whiskeytown, where summer use of mechanized watercraft can be nearly constant. Major activities along lakes and streams in the network include boating, water skiing, swimming, and fishing. Nearly all these uses have the potential to impact some elements of the aquatic ecosystem. Other major influences include effects of air and water pollution of local diffuse and point source origin, non-native plant and animal species, and surrounding land use. These factors influence the major mechanisms and processes of the lake ecosystems and affect both water quality and aquatic communities.





b.

Figure 2.10a, b. Conceptual model of human influences on freshwater ecosystems: a.) lake (lentic) ecosystems, b.) flowing water (lotic) ecosystems.

The stream ecosystems of the Klamath parks are particularly vulnerable to human effects throughout the watersheds in which they occur (Figure 2.10b). Diffuse and point source pollution, fire suppression effects on hydrology, and human demands for water all strongly affect the stream and its residents. Stream and riparian environments are also known to be particularly vulnerable to invasion by non-native species (DeFerrari and Naiman 1994). Collectively, these threats influence the gradients and processes that maintain riparian habitat and stream fish communities, as well as water quality for human uses downstream.

Threats to terrestrial ecosystems range from local effects of visitor use on individual species and ecosystems (including the effects of campground and trail development and pack stock use), to more widespread and diffuse effects, such as the introduction of non-native plant and animal species (Figure 2.11). Although fire exclusion is commonly viewed as a major stressor of terrestrial ecosystems, the broader issue of fire and fuels management has potentially far-ranging effects on terrestrial environments in all the parks. These influences affect the structure of the habitat template, particularly the environmental gradients, disturbance regimes, and landscape patterns that create habitat for ecosystems, communities, and species of interest, such as major plant communities (e.g., redwood forest), keystone ecosystems such as aspen and whitebark pine stands, and potentially imperiled groups such as amphibians and rare plant species.

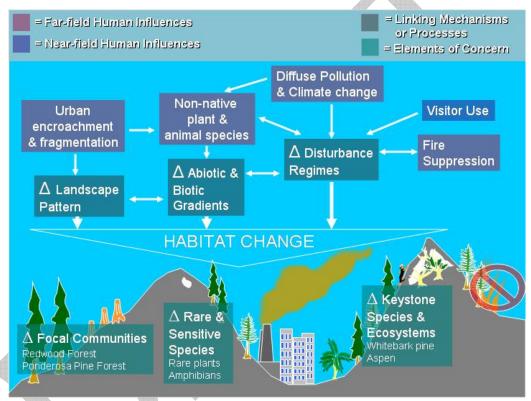


Figure 2.11. Human influences on terrestrial ecosystems.

Human influences on the subterranean environment include effects of excessive visitor use on cave biota through off-trail travel, nutrient enrichment through addition of lint or food crumbs, touching of sensitive geological formations, and disruption of bat hibernacula (2.12). Changes in microclimate caused by excavation of new passageways or development of visitor facilities are also believed to be potentially harmful. Fire suppression may also be a threat to Oregon Caves because the increased growth of vegetation may affect cave water balance. In addition, far-field influences, such as climate change and pollution may affect the intricate balance of chemical and atmospheric processes that foster the growth of cave formations.

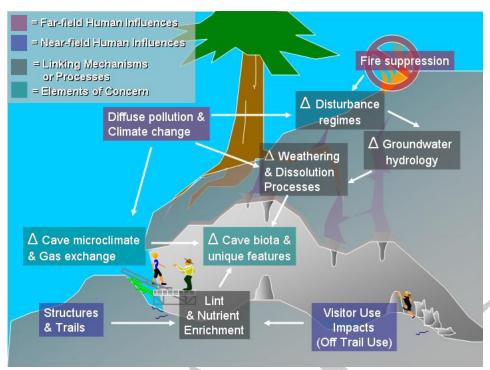


Figure 2.12. Human influences on subterranean ecosystems.

Conceptual Model Refinements

These conceptual models figured prominently in our vital signs scoping process. We used the models to organize workshop participants into breakout groups for the vital signs scoping workshop in May 2004 (and to provide a framework for the discussion in Chapter 1 of this report). Throughout the workshop, network staff consulted the conceptual models to develop monitoring questions and vital signs, or used them as a backdrop for considering the issues. Workshop participants, in turn, provided many useful comments for improving the models. Appendix G contains a report on the results of the vital signs scoping workshop.

Conceptual models are iterative. Although they should be based on fundamental and enduring principles of ecology, they should also be sufficiently flexible to allow refinement as the results of monitoring or other empirical or theoretical advances improve our understanding of the elements and processes of park ecosystems. In the development of these conceptual models, our primary goal was to illustrate the primary influences on park ecosystems. We added additional details to illustrate the primary gradients, dynamics, and human influences structuring the major ecosystem domains. By design, we did not develop models of special habitats or focal animal or plant populations. Detailed conceptual models will be developed, where appropriate, in the documentation for the individual vital signs protocols.

Chapter 3: Vital Signs

3.1 Introduction

The concept of ecological integrity provides a framework for evaluating changing environmental conditions and biodiversity through monitoring (Karr 1991, Dale and Breyeler 2001). Ecological integrity refers to three major concepts: (1) system wholeness, including the presence of appropriate species, populations, and communities; (2) the occurrence of ecological processes at appropriate rates and scales (Angermeier and Karr 1994, Karr 1991); and (3) environmental conditions that support these taxa and processes (Dale and Breyeler 2001). Known or hypothesized stressors may affect ecological integrity. The vital signs selected to monitor effects on ecological integrity are factors that reflect the park ecosystem's structure (referring to the organization or pattern of the system), function (referring to ecological processes), and composition (referring to the variety of elements in the system). They are a subset of the total suite of natural resources that park managers are directed to preserve unimpaired for future generations, including water, air, geological resources, plants and animals, and the various ecological, biological, and physical processes that act on those resources. Vital signs may occur at any level of organization including landscape, community, population, or genetic.

The scoping meetings and conceptual modeling described in the first two chapters of this plan resulted in a list of monitoring questions and potential vital signs. The purposes of this chapter are to describe: (1) the process by which the many potential vital signs that could be monitored were analyzed, rated and prioritized; (2) describe the vital signs that have been determined to be of highest priority for monitoring by the Network.

3.2 Prioritization of Vital Signs

The foundation of the Klamath Network's approach was to identify the most important monitoring questions to answer in relation to potential trends in ecosystem structure, function and composition in the parks. The full set of questions identified throughout the conceptual modeling and scoping processes is located in Appendix G, Tables 2-7. Each of these questions identified one or more possible related vital signs to monitor. Many were based on conceptual modeling of gradient structure, processes, and stressors in the Network ecosystems (Chapter 2). Monitoring questions were developed specifically for each of the four main ecosystems in the Klamath Network (terrestrial, freshwater, marine, and subterranean). We did not use a park-by-park approach, although that approach was used by USGS in identifying water quality vital signs (Section 3.2.3.). Some ecosystems or communities are present in only one park (e.g. marine in Redwood). Resources present in just one park were not considered less important.

To reduce the large list of questions down to the top priorities that could be feasibly monitored, we first removed or rephrased a number of research questions. Then, from the remaining set of questions, we selected a short list of 33 that were most frequently identified or stressed as important throughout the vital signs scoping process. The prioritization of vital signs was then accomplished through a formal ranking exercise, and

follow-up workshop. The process was designed to produce an unbiased list of monitoring projects supported to the maximum extent possible by group consensus.

3.2.1 Vital Signs Ranking, Step 1

A. Rating monitoring questions

We asked 130 experts representing a broad array of scientific disciplines, many of whom had participated in vital signs scoping, to rank candidate vital signs. We sent these experts a database containing questions and vital signs to rank, as well as the specific criteria to use for ranking. The affiliations and disciplines of the 44 experts who responded to our request are shown in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1. Affiliations and expertise of the 44 respondents to the questionnaire sent out to

rate monitoring questions and associated vital signs.

Affiliation	Count	
Federal (non NPS)	6	
Non Profit	2	
NPS (KLMN Parks)	20	
NPS (regional/national)	7	
Other	2	
University	5	
Area of Expertise		
Aquatic Ecology & Systematics-Animals	3	
Aquatic Ecology & Systematics-Plants	1	
Geography-Biological	2	
Microbiology	1	
Natural Resources	9	
Physical Science-Air Resources	2	
Physical Science-Geology & Soils	5	
Physical Science-Water Resources	1	
Terrestrial Ecology & Systematics-Animals	8	
Terrestrial Ecology & Systematics-Plants	12	

As these numbers show, respondent's affiliations were weighted toward National Park Service and other government organizations, while disciplines were most often in the fields of terrestrial plant and animal ecology and systematics. There were no cave science respondents. There were relatively few respondents from academia. Many people were not comfortable rating phenomena outside their particular focused area of expertise. Nonetheless, we feel that the rating provided useful guidance, with the exception that the importance of cave resources may have been under-represented, despite their central ecological and management significance in Lava Beds and Oregon Caves. However, by identifying subterranean ecosystems as one of the 4 basic ecosystem types in the Klamath Network in our conceptual modeling and throughout Chapters 1 and 2, we helped ensure that these resources would not get overlooked in determining vital signs for monitoring.

As described below, we specifically elevated the cave monitoring questions and vital signs for this reason. This helped ensure that the monitoring program will have environmental breadth. However, there was no attempt to divide vital signs selected equally among ecosystems.

<u>Management and Ecological Significance</u>. Experts were asked to rate the management and ecological significance of the 33 monitoring questions on the short list according to the criteria and scoring shown in the box below:

Management Significance Criteria

- 1. The question addresses the need for information to be used in adaptive management aimed at maintaining ecosystem integrity in the Klamath Network.
- 2. The question addresses the kind of ecosystem changes that managers, policy makers, researchers, and the public will recognize as important to ecosystem integrity.
- 3. The question addresses the need to provide an early warning of loss of ecosystem integrity that can be addressed through management actions.
- 4. The question addresses National Park Service performance goals.
- 5. The question addresses important information gaps in our understanding of how to manage and maintain the integrity of ecosystems of the Klamath Network.

Ecological Significance Criteria

- 1. The question addresses important changes to ecosystem structure that may occur.
- 2. The question addresses important changes to ecosystem function that may occur.
- 3. The question addresses important changes to ecosystem composition that may
- 4. The question addresses the need to provide early warning of changes to ecosystem structure, function, and composition that may occur.
- 5. Reference conditions exist or may be defined against which monitored changes can be measured or interpreted to describe changes in ecosystem integrity.

Scoring

- 4- Very high: Strongly agree with all 5 statements
- 3 –High: Strongly agree with at least 4 statements
- 2 Medium: Strongly agree with 2-3 statements
- 1- Low: Strongly agree with only 1 statement
- 0- None. Strongly agree with none of these statements.

B. Ranking results—monitoring questions

Table 3.2. The 33 monitoring questions on the short list with their ranking scores.

Monitoring question What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g., fire, floods)? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? significance average significance average significance average significance average 1 3.43 3.46 3.44 3.14 3.29 3.29 3.28 3.21 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.27 3.28 3.20 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.28 3.20 3.16 3.20 3.10 3.21 3.32 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.2	Table 3.2. The 33 monitoring questions			Management	
Monitoring question What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in hepredominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? Rank average average both scores 3.44 3.14 3.29 3.21 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.20 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.20 3.16 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10			_	_	
What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in ground waters?* What are status and trends in ground waters?* What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? I 3.43 3.46 3.44 3.14 3.29 3.21 3.32 3.28 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.23 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10	Monitoring question	Rank	0		-
abundance of non-native species through time? What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in anthropogenic disturbance? What are the status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 1 3.43 3.44 3.14 3.29 3.29 3.21 3.32 3.28 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.20 3.03 3.15 3.28 3.29 3.20 3.16 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10			uveruge	uveruge	Sour Scores
through time? What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 3		1	3.43	3.46	3.44
What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are status and trends in numan impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 2 3.44 3.14 3.29 3.28 3.21 3.35 3.28 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10	_	_			
function, and composition of focal communities? What are the status and trends in anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?** Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 2 3.44 3.14 3.29 3.21 3.35 3.28 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.16 3.20 3.03 3.15 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10					
what are the status and trends in anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 3 3.21 3.35 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.27 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.29 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.21 3.22 3.28 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.25 3.26 3.27 3.28 3.27 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.21 3.22 3.28 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.25 3.26 3.20 3.28 3.27 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.29 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10	·	2	3.44	3.14	3.29
anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 3 3.21 3.35 3.28 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.29 3.00 3.16 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.01 3.20 3.01 3.20 3.02 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.03 3.28 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.20 3	communities?				
anthropogenic disturbance? What are status and trends in focal taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 4 3.38 3.15 3.26 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.08 3.09 3.15 3.09 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.11 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.12 3.23 3.25 3.25 3.26 3.25 3.26 3.27 3.28 3.27 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.25 3.29 3.29 3.29 3.15 3.20 3.07 3.16 3.20 3.03 3.15 3.15 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.26 3.07 3	What are the status and trends in	2	221	2.25	2.20
taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are status and trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 4 3.38 3.15 3.26 3.27 3.28 3.25 3.28 3.29 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.29 3.03 3.15 3.10 3.28 3.15 3.11 3.28 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20	anthropogenic disturbance?	3	3.21	3.33	3.28
amphibians)? What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 5 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.08 3.29 3.03 3.15 3.08 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10	What are status and trends in focal				
What are status and trends in focal species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 5 3.22 3.28 3.25 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.18 3.28 3.03 3.19 3.19 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10	taxa groups (e.g. birds, fish, and	4	3.38	3.15	3.26
species? What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time?	amphibians)?				
What are status and trends in surface waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 3.26 3.27 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.28 3.15 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.20 3.10 3.20	What are status and trends in focal	5	2 22	2 29	2 25
waters (including pristine and 303d listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 10 3.26 3.07 3.16 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.15 3.08 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 3.13 3.28 3.15 3.15 3.15 3.16	species?	3	3.22	3.20	3.23
listed waters)? What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 7 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.08 3.20 3.15 10 3.20 3.08 3.20 3.14 11 3.18 2.89 3.04 12 3.17 2.66 2.91 13 2.74 2.70 2.72	What are status and trends in surface				
What are the status and trends in natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 7 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.08 3.20 3.14 10 3.20 3.00 3.10 11 3.18 2.89 3.04 12 3.17 2.66 2.91 13 2.74 2.70 2.72	waters (including pristine and 303d	6	3.26	3.07	3.16
natural disturbance events (e.g. fire, floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 7 3.28 3.03 3.15 3.03 3.15 3.15 3.08 3.20 3.14 4 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20	,	1			
floods)? What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 8 3.03 3.28 3.15 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 2.28 2.70 3.13 3.21 3.22 3.15 3.23 3.15 3.24 3.20 3.29 3.20 3.20 3.20 3					
What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 8 3.03 3.28 3.15 3.16 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.11 3.12 2.89 3.04 3.13 2.89 3.14 3.13 2.28 3.15		7	3.28	3.03	3.15
impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 8 3.03 3.28 3.15 3.15 3.10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 3.28 3.20 3.14 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 3.28 3.15	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
animal populations and habitats? What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 9 3.08 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.18 2.89 3.04 3.12 3.17 2.66 2.91 3.17 2.70 2.72					2.1
What are status and trends in pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 9 3.08 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.18 3.18 3.18 3.19 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10	-	8	3.03	3.28	3.15
pollutants (chemicals, nutrients, effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 9 3.08 3.20 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.18 2.89 3.04 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.18 3.18 3.18 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10 3.10					
effluents, and trash)? How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.20 3.2			2.00	2.20	2.14
How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.18 2.28 3.04 3.11 3.12 3.13 3.20 3.10	- 4	9	3.08	3.20	3.14
and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.20 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.12 3.17 2.66 2.91 3.17 2.70 2.72					
with land use change in and around the parks? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 10 3.20 3.00 3.10 3.10 3.11 3.18 2.89 3.04 2.91 2.70 2.72					
What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 11 3.18 2.89 3.04 2.89 3.04 2.91 2.70 2.72		10	3.20	3.00	3.10
What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 11 3.18 2.89 3.04 3.17 2.66 2.91 2.72 2.72 3.13 2.72 2.70 2.72 2.70					
predominant habitat types? What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 11 3.18 2.89 3.04 3.17 2.66 2.91 2.70 2.72					
What are status and trends in pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 12 3.17 2.66 2.91 2.72 2.72 3.13 2.28 2.70		11	3.18	2.89	3.04
pollutants (e.g. ozone, N, S, particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 12 3.17 2.66 2.91 2.70 2.72 3.13 2.28 2.70					
particulates)? What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 13 2.74 2.70 2.72 4 3.13 2.28 2.70		12	3 17	2.66	2.91
What are status and trends in ground waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 13 2.74 2.70 2.72 2.72	- · ·	12	3.17	2.00	2.71
waters?* Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 13 2.74 2.70 2.72 2.72 2.70	,			<u> </u>	<u>.</u>
Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 14 3.13 2.28 2.70	waters?*	13	2.74	2.70	2.72
changing through time? 14 3.13 2.28 2.70			2.12	2.20	2 = 2
		14	3.13	2.28	2.70
	What are the trends in harvesting of	15	2.49	2.87	2.68

resources?				
erates, extent, location, or types of onal and depositional processes ged?*	16	2.76	2.59	2.68
t are the trends in diseases or sites (including forest insects) gh time?	17	2.92	2.42	2.67
are snowpack dynamics changing time?*	18	3.03	2.31	2.67
is cave air flow (quantity and ty) changing through time?	19	2.60	2.48	2.54
t is timing and duration of key ate-related phenological events?*	20	2.95	2.05	2.50
is sea level and ocean erature changing?	21	3.00	2.00	2.50
is woody debris production and ge changing over time?*	22	2.62	2.31	2.46
t are status and trends in soils?*	23	2.65	2.20	2.42
are ocean and nearshore esses changing through time?*	24	2.77	2.00	2.38
t are the trends in pollinators?*	25	2.75	2.00	2.38
t are status and trends in erranean water and ice?	26	2.43	2.29	2.36
t are the status and trends of xin accumulation?*	27	2.57	2.10	2.34
t are status and trends in fog?*	28	2.61	1.77	2.19
t are status and trends in ility?*	29	1.89	2.16	2.03
t are changes in extent of soil	30	2.19	1.84	2.02
t are the status and trends in erranean geologic processes?	31	1.95	1.80	1.88
t are the status and trends in ne geologic processes?*	32	2.00	1.54	1.77
t is the effusion rate of geothermal adwater into the surface	33	1.55	1.32	1.43
t are changes in extent of soil ?* t are the status and trends in erranean geologic processes? t are the status and trends in the geologic processes?* t is the effusion rate of geothermal	31 32 33	1.95 2.00 1.55	1.80 1.54 1.32	

^{*}Indicates questions that are not addressed by vital signs proposed for monitoring by the Klamath Network because of this ranking process. Additional ranking and considerations described below.

C. Ranking vital signs associated with monitoring questions

Respondents also rated the relevancy and suitability of vital signs associated with the each monitoring question. The list of 172 vital signs associated with the 33 monitoring questions is too lengthy to reproduce here; it is shown in Appendix L. Table 3.3 shows vital signs and associated questions from the final list of selected vital signs. Relevancy was ranked on a 0-4 scoring system based on the criteria and scoring shown in the following box.

Relevancy Criteria

- 1. Measurable: Capable of being defined and measured.
- 2. Interpretable: Changes in the vital sign and their significance will be apparent.
- 3. Resource at risk.
- 4. Sensitive to change.
- 5. Comprehensive: indicator of broad-scale changes.

Scoring

- 4: Very High, meets all 5 criteria
- 3: High, meets at least 4 criteria
- 2: Medium, meets 2-3 criteria
- 1: Low, meets only 1 criterion
- 0: Very Low, meets none of the criteria

In addition to providing a ranking of monitoring questions and associated vital signs (Appendix L), many respondents provided insightful comments, which were encouraged by the design of the questionnaire. These comments are shown in Appendix M and Appendix N.

3.2.2 Vital Signs Ranking, Step 2

The next step was to consider legal/policy mandate and cost/feasibility of potential vital signs, factors that all networks considered, and to address additional factors from the literature and lessons learned in other ecological monitoring. This was accomplished at a two-day workshop in Redding, California on April 27-28, 2005, where the final selection of vital signs was accomplished. The specific purpose of the workshop was to review and evaluate the result of the ranking generated by the questionnaire and subsequent Klamath Network staff modification of the ranking. Members of the Network's Technical Advisory Committee and other resource specialists from all six of the network Parks attended the workshop.

To guide the process of identifying final vital signs, Daniel Sarr, Klamath I&M Network Coordinator, provided a brief overview of lessons from the Northwest Forest Plan monitoring. He focused on those lessons germane to the Klamath Network. He noted the tremendous expense of monitoring a single species throughout the Pacific Northwest (for example, more than \$25 M for the northern spotted owl over ten years). He also presented several possible shortcomings with species oriented monitoring: (1) individual or focal species may be poor indicators because they have not been tested in many cases, and cannot be assumed to describe changes among other species; and (2) despite their obvious conservation significance, rare species may not be good choices because they require excessive sampling intensity to detect changes (Manley 2004). He suggested some of these concerns could be addressed, in part, by sampling multimetric or community indices (e.g., Index of Biotic Integrity, etc. Karr 1981, Karr and Chu 1999).

Additional concepts identified for consideration during selection of vital signs included the following:

- 1. Conceptual Relevance Is the indicator relevant to the assessment question (management concern) and to the ecological resource or function at risk?
- 2. Feasibility of Implementation Are the methods for sampling and measuring the environmental variables technically feasible, appropriate, and efficient for use in a monitoring program?
- 3. Response Variability Are human errors of measurement and natural variability over time and space sufficiently understood and documented?
- 4. Interpretation and Utility Will the indicator convey information on ecological condition that is meaningful to environmental decision-making?

Taken together, the above considerations provided some conceptual sideboards to guide final vital signs selection. Other important issues included scope, cost-effectiveness, and collaboration potential.

Because of the large number of vital signs (172), a tentative ranking based on these round II criteria was developed by Network staff prior to the workshop. The Network's criteria for ranking vital signs based on legal and policy factors were essentially the same as recommended by the National I&M program, explained in the following box:

Legal and policy mandate ranking criteria

Very High: The park is required to monitor this specific resource/indicator by some specific, binding, legal mandate (e.g., Endangered Species Act for an endangered species, Clean Air Act for Class 1 airsheds), or park enabling legislation.

High: The resource/indicator is specifically covered by an Executive Order (e.g., invasive plants, wetlands) or a specific Memorandum of Understanding signed by the NPS (e.g., bird monitoring), as well as by the Organic Act, other general legislative or Congressional mandates, and NPS Management Policies.

Moderate: There is a Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA) goal specifically mentioned for the resource/indicator being monitored, or the need to monitor the resource is generally indicated by some type of federal or state law as well as by the Organic Act and other general legislative mandates and NPS Management Policies, but there is no specific legal mandate for this particular resource.

Low: The resource/indicator is listed as a sensitive resource or resource of concern by credible state, regional, or local conservation agencies or organizations, but it is not specifically identified in any legally-binding federal or state legislation. The resource/indicator is also indirectly covered by the Organic Act and other general legislative or Congressional mandates such as the Omnibus Park Management Act and GPRA, and by NPS Management Policies.

Very Low: The resource/indicator is covered by the Organic Act and other general legislative or Congressional mandates such as the Omnibus Park Management Act and by NPS Management Policies, but there is no specific legal mandate for this particular resource.

The criteria for ranking vital signs based on cost and feasibility factors, as well as the scoring are described in the following box:

Cost and feasibility ranking criteria

- Sampling and analysis techniques are cost-effective. Cost-effective techniques may range from relatively simple methods applied frequently or more complex methods applied infrequently (e.g., data collection every five years results in low annual cost).
- The indicator has measurable results that are repeatable with different, qualified personnel.
- Well-documented, scientifically sound monitoring protocols already exist for the indicator.
- Implementation of monitoring protocols is feasible given the constraints of site accessibility, sample size, equipment maintenance, etc.
- Data will be comparable with data from other monitoring studies being conducted elsewhere in the region by other agencies, universities, or private organizations.
- The opportunity for cost-sharing partnerships with other agencies, universities, or private organizations in the region exists.

4 Very High: Strongly agree with all 6 of the statements above.
3 High: Strongly agree with 5 of the statements above.
2 Medium: Strongly agree with 4 of the statements above.
1 Low: Strongly agree with 3 of the statements above.
0 Very Low: Strongly agree with 2 of the statements above.

O None: Strongly agree with 1 or fewer of the statements above.

The overall ranking that resulted from considering all four criteria is shown in Appendix L. This was based on weighting of each criteria's score using the following equation:

(0.3 * Management Significance score) + (0.3 * Ecological Significance score) + (0.1 * Relevancy score) + (0.1 * Legal mandate score) + (0.2 * cost & feasibility score) = final score

The effects of changing the weightings of each component score were explored both prior to and during the workshop.

The ranking shown in Appendix L was the starting point for the workshop attendees to select vital signs to be monitored. Following an explanation and review of the ranking results two groups were formed to independently adjust the influence of legal mandate and cost and feasibility issues in the overall ranking.

Each group began adjusting the vital signs ranking by giving legal mandate/policy a weight of zero. Both groups felt that we should recognize what we are mandated to monitor, but that the ranking criteria and scores for legal/policy mandate were hard to assign. Both groups then categorized each vital sign according to the ecosystem to which it applied (terrestrial, aquatic, marine, or subterranean). Both groups combined and selected vital signs that together would cover all 4 ecosystems of the Klamath Network parks. Rare species were discussed and considered for inclusion in monitoring of keystone and sensitive species, despite the statistical challenges they pose, because of "management mandate." Management mandate also elevated water quality vital signs. Thus, legal/policy mandate did come into play, but only with regard to these specific vital signs. Each group was successful in combining and reducing the number of vital signs, and in picking the top 10-11 with coverage of all 4 ecosystems.

3.2.3 The Top Ten Network Vital Signs

The two groups reconvened and from the two lists of vital signs were able to select the top 10, representing the consensus of the meeting, as shown in the Table 3.3. Based on subsequent budget analyses and meetings with park resource staff, the Network concluded that it could include the three top rated items under a multifaceted keystone and sensitive plants and animals vital sign: amphibians, whitebark pine, and aspen. It was further decided that the status and conditions of aspen groves needed study before this community could be justified as a vital sign.

Table 3.3. Klamath Network top ten vital signs and the portions of the National Park Service Ecological Monitoring Framework in which they occur. Each vital sign is presented with its ranking score and with associated monitoring questions that would be directly or indirectly addressed. These questions are numbered according to their rank. The main question is listed first. Other questions that would be addressed indirectly are then listed. These may not directly pertain to the national framework categories. National framework categories that contain no vital signs are not shown. Also shown are affected ecosystems (T = terrestrial, S = subterranean, F = freshwater aquatic, M=marine).

National I&M levels 1	National I&M level 2	National I&M level 3	Vital Sign	Vital Sign Score	Monitoring Questions Addressed	Affected Eco- systems
Biological Integrity	Invasive Species	-Invasive/ Exotic Plants -Invasive/ Exotic animals	Non-native species	3.52	 What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? 	T, F, M,
	Focal species or communities		Keystone and sensitive plants & animals (amphibians, whitebark pine, aspen)	3.39	5. What are the status and trends in focal species?4. What are the status and trends in taxa groups?15. What are the trends in harvesting of park resources?17. What are the trends in diseases or parasites (including forest insects) through time?	T, F, M, S
		-Grasslands -Shrublands -Forests	Terrestrial vegetation (major habitat types)	3.39	 2. What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? 11. What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types? 1. What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? 14. Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 	Т

		-Birds Bird Communities		3.38	2. What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities?1. What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? (e.g. Barred Owl)	T, F, M
		-Intertidal Communities	Intertidal Communities	3.33	 2. What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? 8. What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? 3. What are status and trends in anthropogenic disturbances? 14. Are climate associated ecotones changing through time? 21. How is sea level and ocean temperature changing? 	M
		-Aquatic vegetation -Wetland communities	Aquatic Communities	3.27	 2. What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities? 1. What are the trends in distribution and abundance of non-native species through time? (e.g. bullfrogs). 6. What are status and trends in surface waters? 8. What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats? 	F
		-Cave Communities	Cave entrance communities	3.10	2. What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities?5. What are status and trends in focal species?8. What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats?	S
Water	Water quality	-Water Chemistry	Water quality	3.30	9. What are status and trends in pollutants?6. What are status and trends in surface waters?	F, M, S
Eco- system	Landscape dynamics	-Land Cover and Use	Land cover, use, pattern	3.28	10. How are connectivity, fragmentation, and level of park "insularity" changing with land use change	Т

pattern and process			(roads)		in and around the parks (human disturbance dynamics)? 3. What are status and trends in anthropogenic disturbances? 7. What are status and trends in natural disturbances? 2. What are status and trends in structure, function, and composition of focal communities?	
					5. What are the long term trends in the predominant habitat types?	
Geology and soils	Subsurface geologic processes	-Cave features and processes	Environment al Conditions in caves	2.50	19. How is cave air flow (quantity and quality) changing through time?2. What are status and trends in structure function and composition of focal communities?8. What are status and trends in human impacts near sensitive plant and animal populations and habitats?22. What are status and trends in subterranean water and ice?31. What are the status and trends in subterranean geologic processes?	S

3.2.4 Justification for Vital Signs Selected and Linkage to Conceptual Models

The process of identifying consensus on the top ten vital signs for monitoring resulted in a strong consolidation of many discrete vital signs into very broad ones, all of which are a high priority for monitoring (Table 3.3). This consolidation proved to be a good strategy for moving forward with consensus, and allowed the group to think programmatically, thereby identifying vital signs groups that could clearly be implemented as an I&M subprogram. We also sought to develop a list with complementarity, recognizing that it will be necessary to monitor a broad and multifaceted suite of vital signs to effectively track ecological integrity of the four main ecosystem domains of the Klamath Network. Thus, the vital signs are directly linked to the four major influences on park ecosystems: abiotic, biotic, dynamic, and human (Figure 2.2).

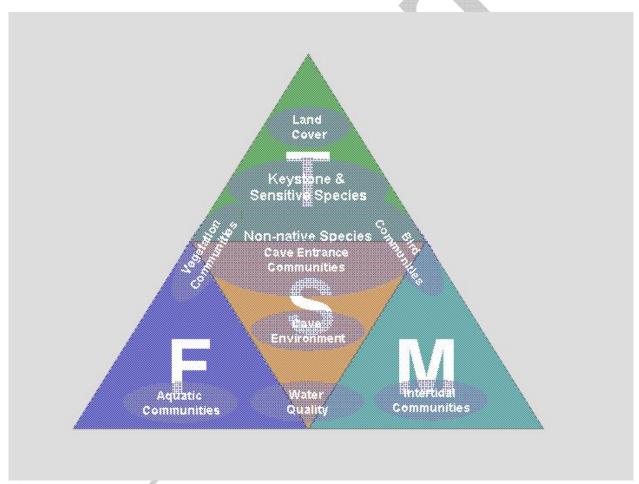


Figure 3.1. Conceptual model showing 4 major ecosystems and the top ten vital signs. Spheres in which vital signs are located indicate which ecosystems would be monitored, and illustrate generally how thorough monitoring would be in each of the major ecosystem types.

The vital signs selected have considerable breadth in the park ecosystems and key monitoring questions they can address (Figure 3.1). In addition to involving all four major ecosystem types, the vital signs address 20 of the 33 monitoring questions that were sent out in the questionnaire, either directly or indirectly (Table 3.2, all questions listed except those with an asterisk). Each of the top 12 monitoring questions is addressed, in many cases by more than one vital sign. The

vital signs selected were also all identified in conceptual modeling (<u>Chapter 2</u>). More detailed justifications for each vital sign are described in the protocol development summaries.

3.2.5 Unfunded Vital Signs

Two vital signs that were frequently discussed but were not selected as core vitals signs were climate and air quality. Climate change was viewed as a topic of extreme ecological importance, but low management significance, because it was considered largely beyond the control of park managers. It was also felt that climate monitoring is well addressed by existing park climate stations and synoptic scale monitoring conducted by the National Weather Service, Western Regional Climate Center, and other entities. Similarly, air quality was considered to be very important, but the Network felt that the efforts of the existing Air Resources Program were equal to our current information needs. Therefore, climate and air quality have been designated as unfunded vital signs; their trends will be periodically summarized in collaboration with the appropriate sampling organizations. The Network Data Manager will take the lead on collating relevant information at appropriate intervals to serve the information needs of the Network.

The ten funded and two unfunded vital signs selected during the scoping and prioritization process form the basis for the Klamath Network Vitals Signs Monitoring Program. The subsequent chapters in this report describe the various activities the Network will undertake to implement the Program.



Chapter 4: Sampling Design

4.1 Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to provide an overview of the statistical sampling design for monitoring vital signs in the Klamath Network. The sampling design and analysis of the data collected using it (Chapter 7), are meant to address the three main goals of monitoring in the Network: 1) to determine the status and trends in the Network's vital signs of ecosystem health, 2) to provide early warning of abnormal conditions or impairment of select resources, and 3) to provide quality data to foster a better understanding of the dynamic nature and condition of park ecosystems. The sampling design and analyses are also based on the specific objectives for monitoring of each vital sign (Chapter 5).

This sampling design is one of the major means through which the Klamath Network ensures scientific rigor, utility, and feasibility of our program. Each of these factors has been carefully considered within budgetary, staffing, and logistic constraints. The final sampling design represents tradeoffs among spatial and temporal sampling intensity, efficiency, and safety. Complete details of the individual sampling designs are provided within individual monitoring protocols in accordance with Oakley et al. (2003).

Here we summarize the major concepts and sampling designs. First, we briefly define key sampling concepts in <u>section 4.2</u>. In <u>section 4.3</u> we describe the different procedures used to allocate sampling units to the various panels (see definitions below). <u>Section 4.4</u> describes the temporal portion of the sampling design.

4.2 Monitoring, Sampling Concepts, and Definitions

Monitoring is the collection and analysis of repeated observations or measurements over a long period of time to document the status and trend in ecological parameters. These ecological parameters are aspects of the vital signs of ecosystem health (structural, functional, and compositional) chosen in the Klamath Network scoping process (Chapter 3). The monitoring program does not set out to investigate a single question or to test individual hypotheses; instead it attempts to collect objective and scientifically defensible data to answer a wide array of monitoring questions, some of which may not be finalized at the outset. However, objectives are clearly defined. Objectives for monitoring of the Klamath Network vital signs and related parameters are given in Chapter 5.

The term *population* is used to denote the aggregate from which a sample is to be drawn. Prior to selecting a sample, the population must be divided into parts that are called *sampling units*. These units must cover the whole of the population and they must not overlap, in the sense that every element in the population belongs to one and only one unit (Cochran 1977). The *sampled population* should coincide with the population about which information is desired, i.e., the *target population*. Sometimes, due to safety concerns or accessibility constraints, the sampled population is more restricted than the target population. Hence, inferences drawn from the sample apply to the sampled population. The construction of the list of sampling units is called the *sampling frame*.

A *sample* is the subset of units from the target population for which a response or parameter has been measured. In some studies, sample units will be discrete entities, such as lakes or individuals. In other studies, sample units will be fixed areas in which numerous measurements are taken. Examples include vegetation plots, portions of image data, etc. In still other studies, sample units will be survey routes whose size may be variable, e.g., transects used for bird monitoring. Unless otherwise noted, the individual samples will be generated in a prescribed manner akin to a random draw; that is to say, the sample units are randomly selected and are known as a *probability sample*.

4.2.1 Membership Design

Several methods will be utilized to select sampling units, which will depend upon the resources available and the vital sign(s) of interest. For drawing probabilistic samples from stream/river networks and large areas such as forests, the Klamath Network will use a grid-based sampling design. For discrete entities such as small ponds and individual cave entrances, samples will be drawn using a *list-based* procedure. The Klamath Network will also employ non-probabilistic spatial sampling approaches; for the land cover vital sign, the Klamath Network will conduct a *census* of parks and surrounding areas, while for a few particular cases sampling locations will be selected subjectively from as *reference* sites. Details for each of these sampling methods are described in section 4.3.

4.2.2 Visitation Design

Most sample designs proposed by the Klamath Network will rotate field sampling efforts through sets of sample units with respect to time. We define a *panel* as a group of sample units that are all sampled during the same time period (McDonald 2003). Individual panels will be assigned a (re-) visitation schedule dependent upon the vital sign of interest.

The membership and visitation designs have been developed to work in concert with one another. Accordingly, the membership design allocates sampling units to each panel in a similar manner such that the overall spatial design is similar across panels. Collectively, the panels represent a thorough investigation of population under study (large sample size), while individually, each panel provides a snapshot of the current status of the vital sign of interest. The visitation design requires the investigator(s) to return to each sampling location within each panel after a prescribed amount of time has elapsed. This allows one to potentially detect change (trend) in the vital signs. Hence, over time the database becomes rich in both spatial and temporal data. Table 4.1 summarizes the sampling designs for each vital sign.

4.3 Overview of Sampling Designs

The overall sampling design for each vital sign consists of two distinct components: the allocation of sampling units to the panel (spatial design) and the visitation schedule (temporal design). The former describes how the sampling units are selected from the target population, whereas the latter outlines the time frame over which sampling units are measured. The subsequent narrative describes the various methods for allocating sampling units and section 4.4 outlines the visitation schedules.

4.3.1 Grid-based Sampling

Whenever possible, the Klamath Network will employ a Generalized Random Tessellation Stratified (GRTS) survey design (Stevens and Olsen 2004). The primary reason for using GRTS is that this method is designed to generate spatially balanced surveys ensuring uniform and regular coverage of the area (or population) of interest. GRTS can be applied to both one- and two-dimensional entities as well as to individual strata within each of these domains. The resulting output from a GRTS survey design is a list of cell locations such that any collection of n adjacent locations within the list has a spatial density pattern that closely mimics the spatial density pattern of the target resource. As a result, one can increase the sampling intensity while maintaining spatial balance by simply including the next item(s) from the list.

For the majority of the vital signs within the Network, GRTS will be used to select the sampling locations. However, in several cases the sampling frames will be restricted by accessibility constraints and safety concerns. Inaccessible locations are considered to be locations that are greater than 1 km from the nearest road or trail. For both safety concerns and to avoid damage to understory vegetation we exclude areas having a slope in excess of 30 percent, scree and talus slopes, and lava flows. The resultant sampling population, which will be identified using GIS tools, necessarily is smaller than the target population and, consequently, will reduce the scope of the inference base.

To accommodate a higher sampling intensity in sensitive high elevation regions, the Klamath Network will generate separate sampling frames for strata defined by elevation. After consultation with park ecologists, elevations above 2057m (6750') at Crater Lake, 2224m (8,000') at Lassen, and 1524m (5,000') at Whiskeytown were designated as sensitive high elevation habitats. Similarly, a different sampling intensity is desired for riparian (and wetland) vegetation and therefore a separate sampling frame will be constructed using a buffer about the stream/river, or linear network coverage, and a wetlands delineation. This same sampling frame will be used for both the keystone species-amphibian and aquatic community vital signs.

The number of sampling locations allocated to each park is based on the square root of the area of the target population and, in the case for general terrestrial vegetation, the number of general vegetation types it contains. For water quality monitoring, the number of probability samples will also vary by park depending on how many locations are subjectively selected index sites (see below). In some cases, park resource staff wish to sample particular locations due to past history of sampling them, regulatory requirements, etc.

Bird community monitoring membership and revisit designs will likely be transects (routes) whose start locations will be a spatially balanced sample of points determined using GRTS. Transects will likely consist of several points separated by 250 meters. Because of the need for sampling during the early morning hours, only relatively accessible areas can be sampled, limiting inference. Distances among sample points will be known, allowing for the effects of spatial autocorrelation to be determined in preliminary data analyses (Legendre et al. 2002).

4.3.2 List-based Sampling

For discrete landscape features such as small lakes, caves and cave entrances, a list-sampling approach will be employed. A separate list (sampling frame) will be constructed for each class of features and a random sample will be drawn from each list for each panel.

For the cave entrance communities and cave environments at Lava Beds, the list of suitable sites for monitoring will be defined by cave experts based on cave size, depth, and the biological and geological resources present. A number of caves in the park take up to several hours to reach on foot, and may be omitted from the list of potential sites due to inaccessibility. The cave entrance and cave environment monitoring protocol is currently in development.

4.3.3 Reference Sites

Reference sites are defined to be locations that are assumed to be representative of the population of interest but have not been randomly selected. The integrated water quality and aquatic community and amphibian monitoring will consist of a split panel design, with one panel being reference sites that are visited annually. Additionally reference sites will be selected for the intertidal community vital sign and for the cave entrance communities and cave environments vital signs at Oregon Caves.

Reference sites for water quality, aquatic community, and amphibian monitoring will be subjectively selected by park and Network staff. Justification will be provided for each reference site selected based primarily on (1) how representative the characteristics of a site are of the larger target population; and (2) a history of past water quality and/or aquatic community sampling activities at a site that a park or the network would like to continue; (3) a regulatory requirement to monitor the site (impaired waters). These reference sites will be sampled and revisited annually. These sites will be useful for calibrating measurement errors as well as for helping to establish trends in water quality and aquatic community organization and structure.

Because cave entrances and cave interior environments at Oregon Caves are few and unique, representative sites will be chosen for monitoring. The selection criteria will include the level of human impact. The cave sampling protocol is under study, but is expected to include biotic sampling as well as continuous measurements of physical variables using instrumentation.

4.3.4 Census Data

Repeated, complete censuses will be made of the land cover at all parks and the adjacent areas within the network using satellite image data.

4.4 Visitation Schedule

Each panel of the I&M design will be assigned a (re-)visitation schedule such that each member of the panel will be sampled during the same field season (year). For the Klamath Network, the field seasons range in duration from 3-6 months. The visitation schedule also defines the number of field seasons (years) between subsequent visits. Here we adopt the notation proposed by McDonald (2003). In the notation, the first integer in a bracketed couplet refers to the number of panels, the second number refers to the years between revisits. For example, a panel that is to be sampled annually is assigned a visitation schedule of [1-0], whereas a set of five panels where each panel is to be visited exactly once every five years has a visitation schedule [1-4].

The majority of panels within KLMN are to be either sampled annually, every other year, or once every five years. The exceptions are for the intertidal vital sign which is scheduled to be

sampled twice annually and the land cover vital sign, which is a complete census, which is to be performed every five years (unless circumstances suggest more frequent monitoring is needed).

Table 4.1. Spatial and temporal sampling designs for each vital sign in the Klamath Network.

	0 0	- 0	
Vital Cian		Spatial	Visitation
Vital Sign		Allocation	Schedule
Non-native, invasive species		GRTS	[1-1]
Keystone and sensitive plants and	Amphibians	Index/GRTS	[1-0],[1-4]
animals	Aspen stands	TBD	TBD
aiiiiiais	Whitebark pine	GRTS	[1-1]
Vegetation	High elevation	GRTS	[1-4]
Vegetation	Riparian/wetlands	GRTS	[1-4]
Bird communities		TBD	[1-1]
Intertidal communities		Index	Twice per year
Aquatic communities		Index/GRTS	[1-0] [1-4]
Cave entrance communities	Lava Beds	List	TBD
Cave entrance communities	Oregon Caves	Index	TBD
Environmental conditions in caves		List	TBD
Water quality		Index/GRTS	[1-0] [1-4]
Land cover		Census	[1-4]

Chapter 5: Sampling Protocols

This chapter provides a summary of the key elements of the protocols that will be used by the Klamath Network to monitor vital signs of ecosystem health. The key elements of these protocols are the monitoring objectives, the justification for the vital signs, and the schedule. The protocol objectives nest under the main I&M goals of detecting status and trends in vital signs of ecosystem health, detecting abnormalities, and coming to a better understanding of dynamic park ecosystems through monitoring.

The Klamath Network is currently in the process of developing its sampling protocols. They will be consistent with the National I&M guidelines described by Oakley et al. (2003). The guidelines explain how effective monitoring protocols must thoroughly define the monitoring questions, objectives, sampling designs, and statistical inferences that can be drawn. They must also determine ahead of time how monitoring data will be managed, analyzed, reported, and used (Oakley et al. 2003).

Although the Klamath Network's protocols are in development, a list of objectives and a rationale has been prepared for each. This was facilitated by the Network's decision to link potential vital signs with specific monitoring questions, which were ranked (Chapter 3). The monitoring objectives follow from the questions and define the specific parameters to sample over time. They are presented below in Table 5.1. This table also specifies which parks will be included in the monitoring of each vital sign. The justification for monitoring each vital sign is presented in a narrative at the beginning of each Protocol Development Summary. These summaries are presented separately in Appendix O. The fully documented protocols, also containing the justification and objectives for monitoring each vital sign, will be detailed, standalone documents that are supplemental to this monitoring plan.

At present, the Network's schedule is to complete the development of each protocol by FY 2008 and implement each protocol by the end of FY 2009. The development and implementation schedule for each protocol is presented in Chapter 9.

Table 5.1. Vital signs, the parks in which they will be monitored, and the specific monitoring objectives.

Vital Sign		Parks	Objectives
Non-native, invasive species All			1. To detect incipient populations and new occurrences of selected invasive nonnative plants before they become established.
		All	2. Maintain a list of high priority species for all network parks.
			3. Identify vectors and points of entry for new species; identify high priority sites for long-term sampling.
Amp Keystone and	Amphibians	CRLA LAVO ORCA REDW WHIS	Monitored under the water quality and aquatic communities integrated protocol.
sensitive plants and animals	Aspen stands	TBD	TBD
	Whitebark an	Crater Lake and Lassen	1. Determine infection and death rates of whitebark pine from blister rust disease, mountain pine beetle, and other agents over time.
		Volcanic	2. Determine changes in associated floral species composition and cover due to potential factors such as climate change, succession, and natural disturbance.

1. Detect temporal changes in vascular plant composition, diversity, and
structure of predominant terrestrial vegetation and select special interest
vegetation (e.g., sensitive high elevation, riparian and wetland vegetation) at
multiple scales.

2. Monitor processes of tree recruitment and mortality by measuring density of recruits and mortality status of trees.

- 3. Determine temporal changes in fuel (e.g., downed woody debris, litter and duff).
- 4. Where possible, document major forms of disturbance affecting plant communities.
- 5. Sample soils, and measure elevation, slope and aspect and other environmental variables in permanent plots on initial visit.
- 6. Make program adaptive, if possible.
- 1. Determine long-term trends in composition and abundance of bird species that occur in all parks of the network during the breeding season.
- 2. Improve our understanding of breeding bird habitat relationships in the parks and the effects of changes in park environments or management actions on bird populations by correlating changes in bird species composition and abundance with changes in specific habitat variables.
- 3. Gather demographic information to evaluate productivity, adult survival, and recruitment of selected landbird species at Oregon Caves relative to other reference areas.

Terrestrial vegetation

All

Bird communities

All

Intertidal communities		Redwood	1. Assess the temporal dynamics of target species across multiple sites and integrate data with a network of monitoring groups spanning a broad geographic region.
	Intertidal communities		2. Provide information to assess impacts of an oil spill or other anthropogenic activities in the context of natural changes in intertidal populations and communities.
			3. Determine morphological aspects (e.g. color ratios) and key parameters describing population status (e.g. size structure) of selected target species.
			4. Detect and document invasions, changes in species ranges, disease spread, and other events important to developing an understanding of the structure and function of rocky intertidal populations and communities.
Water quality and aquatic communities		All parks except Lava Beds, which	1. Determine baseline and reference water quality characteristics and conditions of lentic and lotic ecosystems network-wide, and monitor these characteristics and conditions for potential impacts due to climate change, land use and non-recreational human activities, invasive aquatic biota, and visitor use activities.
	lacks surface water resources.	2. Determine the status and trends in the structure, function, and composition of aquatic communities in lentic and lotic ecosystems network-wide. Monitor communities for potential impacts due to climate change, land use and non-recreational human activities, invasive aquatic biota, and visitor use activities.	

1. Determine status and long-term trends of specific biotic and abiotic resources in showcase caves versus caves that are largely or completely unmanaged.

The following resources and parameters have been identified to monitor:

- a. Biotic
 - Plants: measures of abundance (density, cover, frequency) at cave entrances.
 - Bats: harp trap counts, timed visual counts.
 - Macroinvertebrates: aggregate macroinvertebrate sample, use of attractants.
 - Microbes: cave sediment biological activity.
- b. Abiotic
 - Air flow, relative humidity, temperature using instrumentation.
 - Calcite slab for dissolution and deposition.
 - Ice changes.
 - Impacts to cave formations.
 - Lint deposition.
 - Surface polishing.
- 2.Monitor these specific biotic and abiotic resources along a gradient from cave entrance to dark interior, encompassing the whole cave system.

Cave entrance communities and environmental conditions in caves

Lava Beds, Oregon Caves

		1. Determine the status and trends in the composition and configuration of land-cover types on park and adjacent lands at five-year intervals.
Land cover	All parks and surrounding areas of at least 5 km.	2. Determine the status and trends in the connectivity of land-cover types within parks, and for park and adjacent lands combined at five-year intervals.
		3. Determine the status and trends in cross-boundary (park vs. adjacent lands) contrasts in land-cover types at fire-year intervals.
		4. Determine long-term changes in fire frequency and extent.
		5. Determine long-term changes in the frequency and extent of insect and disease outbreaks.

Chapter 6: Data Management

6.1 Introduction

Information is the common currency of science, resource management, education, and policy. A data management system must provide efficient ways to enter, store, protect, and quickly disseminate accurate information to those who need it. Such a system draws little attention when working well, but can greatly limit the potential of a monitoring program when it is damaged or flawed. The Klamath Network has developed a Data Management Plan (Appendix P; available for download at http://www1.nature.nps.gov/im/units/klmn/index.htm) that outlines the Network's strategy to support inventory and monitoring and to ensure that the program serves the parks and public. This chapter provides a general overview of this plan and its role in the Klamath Network's inventory and monitoring program.

The Klamath Network will be monitoring a wide assortment of parameters through time and communicating their findings to diverse audiences for varied purposes. Because of the complexity and expected longevity of the monitoring program, complicated issues may arise with data management. Long-term monitoring projects have the tendency to outlive the current staff. These programs are likely to adapt to changing knowledge, techniques, and equipment. They must account for shifting priorities and variable funding. In addition, they need to be developed for diverse and changing audiences. In order to efficiently and accurately provide for these needs, the Network has begun working on a data management strategy. Working with local, regional, and national NPS staff and with Southern Oregon University (SOU) we have developed an infrastructure that allows our data management system to grow while at the same time supplying security, storage and the ability to disseminate data and information. Through our Data Management Plan we have outlined the methodologies we will use to manage data through time and ensure its integration in park science, management, and education activities.

6.2 Data Management Plan

The first step in implementing our data management strategy was to develop a detailed Data Management Plan (in draft). The plan outlines:

- The goals and objectives of the Klamath Network's Data Management Program.
- How Klamath Network personnel will prioritize time and funding towards data management activities based on information needs outlined in monitoring protocols and inventory projects.
- The roles and responsibilities of each position in the Network to integrate proper data management skills into all aspects of the Network business.
- Details of the infrastructure the Network will utilize to create, store, maintain, and disseminate data and information.
- The methods the Klamath Network will follow to manage data throughout all phases of a project's data life cycle.

In addition to the Data Management Plan, the Klamath Network is developing procedural documents to guide Network and project staffs for many aspects of data management. Guideline

documents will provide detailed instructions that apply to all projects conducted or funded by the Network. Standard operating procedure (SOP) documents are similar to guideline documents except they are project-specific and will be created on an as-needed basis prior to implementing a project. When complete, guideline and SOP documents will be added to the appendix of the data management plan and monitoring protocol when applicable. In addition, these documents will be made available located at the Klamath Network internet website:

http://www.nature.nps.gov/im/units/klmn/index.htm

These documents will also be posted on the Klamath Network intranet website:

http://www1.nrintra.nps.gov/im/units/klmn/

The Data Management Plan and supporting procedural documents are all intended to be used in conjunction with each other to ensure that:

- Data are properly documented so they may be easily disseminated and utilized by a diverse group of users far beyond the lifespan of a project.
- Data are consistent and held to the highest quality possible by providing standards and methods that all employees working on a project will follow.
- Data and information are stored in a manner so they are secure, easily accessible, and protected from unauthorized use.
- The Network supports National I&M programs by providing data and information in a compatible format.

6.3 Types of Data and Information

In general, when conducting a natural resource project, field crews collect a set of quantitative and qualitative measures typically known as "raw data." These data are then processed, analyzed, and generalized to become "information" used to write reports, run analysis, create maps, and develop brochures. For the purpose of this document, we are describing "data" in its broadest sense. Data can mean anything ranging from raw data collected in the field to processed data used to create charts and statistical analyses. Data can also refer to the documentation that was developed based on the raw data and may include metadata, reports, presentations, and administrative records (Table 6.1).

Table 6.1. Data categories with examples of potential deliverables.

Data Category	Examples	
#	Field forms and notebooks, photographs, digital data	
Raw data	(sound/video recordings, GPS data, probe data, data loggers data,	
	telemetry)	
Derived data	Relational databases, GIS layers, maps, analysis	
Deguments	Protocols, data dictionaries, FGDC / NBII metadata, photograph	
Documents	log	
Reports	Progress reports, scientific publications, annual reports	
Administrative records		

6.4 Infrastructure

Our Network relies heavily on park, regional, national and university information technology (IT) personnel and resources to maintain the overall data management infrastructure for the Klamath Network. Southern Oregon University IT staff is responsible for server maintenance, security, software updates, telecommunication networks, archiving, and routine backup for the Klamath Network administrative office. NPS IT staff is responsible for maintaining computer hardware, supplying software programs and updates, administrative functions, and security.

6.4.1 National I&M Program

The National I&M Program has played a key leadership role in data management by providing website support and several integrated databases that can be utilized to distribute data to a broad audience including park's staff, the research community, and the public. These databases include NatureBib, NPSpecies, Dataset Catalog, Natural Resource Database Template, and NPS Data Store. Figure 6.1 provides a diagram of the natural resource data management framework. Starting in 2004, the Klamath Network began working with park staff and a Data Mining Team to populate these databases with legacy data from the parks (Bridy et al. 2005).

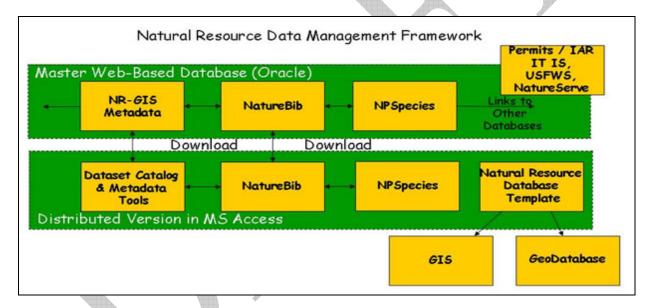


Figure 6.1. Model of the national-level application architecture for integrated natural resources databases.

6.4.2 Host Park Support

The Klamath Network works closely with the staff at Redwood National and State Parks (REDW), the Network's host park, to provide administrative and information technology support. The staff at REDW provides support in the following areas:

- Purchasing
- Budget
- Personnel
- Time keeping

- Records management
- IT Support

6.4.3 Southern Oregon University

The NPS and SOU are both participants in the Pacific Northwest Cooperative Ecosystem Studies Unit, part of a nationwide network of similar units organized around bio-geographical regions for the purpose of providing high-quality scientific research, technical assistance, and education through the linking of participating agencies and university partnership. In 2004, the Klamath Network entered into a task agreement with SOU to establish an administrative office on the main campus, providing the program with access to the information technology, communication, and research capabilities of SOU. Within this agreement, SOU provides:

- A Principal Investigator to oversee all collaborative activities and to ensure that Klamath Network and SOU requirements are met.
- Facilities and infrastructure support including offices, laboratories, libraries, computer-related services, equipment, supplies, telephone services, and meeting rooms.

In return for SOU's services, the Klamath Network provides:

- Financial assistance on a yearly basis for the amount approved in the Klamath Network's Annual Administrative Report and Work Plan.
- An Agreement Technical Representative (ATR) to collaborate with the University Principal Investigator.
- Involvement for faculty and students in research, internships, employment, and educational opportunities where appropriate and mutually beneficial.
- Staff to provide guidance and consultation with students and faculty as needed and appropriate with ongoing activities.

6.5 Roles and Responsibilities

Each person working for the Network must have an appreciation for the design and goals of our data management strategy and a clear understanding of their specific responsibilities in achieving these goals. It will also be necessary for many individuals to participate in more than one data management role within the Network. For example, the Data Manager might take on some Network Coordinator duties, crew members may help with Geographic Information Systems (GIS) tasks, the GIS Specialist may play a role in database development, and the Network Coordinator may participate in the data review. The Network will make every attempt to match the skill sets and developmental goals of each employee when assigning project or programmatic responsibilities.

The Data Management Plan provides detailed descriptions of the roles and responsibility for each participant in a Network developed or funded project. Table 6.2 provides a list of the key roles along with some general responsibilities.

Table 6.2. Roles and responsibilities of personnel working on a project funded or developed by the Klamath Network.

Role	Data Responsibilities
Project Crew Member	 Collect, enter, and verify data Document issues with data collection, data entry, and QA/QC process to Crew Leader
Project Crew Leader	 Organize and verify data Report issues with data collection or documentation to Project Manager Provide training on databases, data collection, and data entry
Project Manager	 Supervise project crews Train Project Crew Leader on proper data management Validate data Provide data documentation Convert data into information Selects protocols and SOPs
Program Assistant	 Maintain the project and photograph database Maintain all aspects of the administrative record Develop and maintain website
GIS Specialist	 Process, manage and validate GPS and other spatial data Make spatial data accessible and useable Conduct spatial analyses Integrate spatial and tabular data Train project manager on proper data management
Network Data Manager	 Develop and support network data management system Ensure Network-managed data are organized, documented, accessible and safe Train staff in proper data management methodology
Network Coordinator	Coordinate and oversee all Network activities
IT Specialist	Provide support for all hardware, software and networking
Park Curator	 Oversee all aspects of specimen acquisition, preservation and documentation Manage the collections for parks in their jurisdiction.
Park Resource Managers	 Inform scope and direction of the Network's needs Integrate information provided by the Network into park planning and management decisions
Superintendents	 Inform scope and direction of the Network's needs Integrate information provided by the Network into park planning and management decisions
I&M National Data Manager	Provide service-wide support

6.5.1 Data Manager

The <u>Data Manager</u> directs a complex program of data management activities within the Network. The person in this role has the overall responsibility for all data managed by the Network and must work closely with the Network Coordinator, Program Assistant, GIS Specialist, and each project manager to ensure data is meeting Network standards. It is the duty of the Data Manager to:

- Provide guidance and standards to everyone involved in data management.
- Make certain infrastructure is sufficient to meet Network objectives.
- Provide coordination, training, technical assistance and professional advice to meet the data management needs of the staff.

- Design, implement, support, and manage database systems for long-term monitoring projects, inventory projects, and various other I&M activities.
- Ensure there is constant communication between the Project Manager, Network Coordinator, GIS Specialist, Program Assistant, and Data Manager for all data management needs.

6.5.2 Project Manager

The Project Manager is responsible for all phases of an inventory or monitoring project. The person in this role works closely with the Data Manager, GIS Specialist, and project crew members to ensure data management protocols, SOPs, and guidelines are being followed. It is one of the Project Manager's core responsibilities to make sure that information collected in the field is accurate, complete, and correctly documented. Overall data management duties of the Project Manager are to:

- Select or develop, in close collaboration with the Network Coordinator and Data Manager, the protocols, standard operating procedures, and sampling methodologies that will be implemented for each project.
- Supervise and certify all field operations including training, equipment handling, data collection and entry, quality control (QC) / quality assurance (QA) measures, verification, and validation.
- Transfer data to the Data Manager on a schedule determined during the planning phase of a project.
- Document field activities that relate to data management.
- Work with the Data Manager and Network Coordinator to determine workload priorities, timelines, project deliverables, summary and final reports, and deadlines.
- Serve as the point of contact for all data collection-related issues on the projects he or she manages.

6.6 Data Management Process and Workflow

Understanding how data are developed allows us to easily communicate the overall objectives and importance of proper data management throughout each phase of a project. The Klamath Network will adhere to the data management methodologies associated with a simple 7-step process known as the data life cycle (Figure 6.2) when developing data or information for a given project. In planning a project, regardless of its length, it is necessary to follow the data life cycle. Each project will produce similar data (Table 6.1) that will need to be managed and made available to a diversity of users.

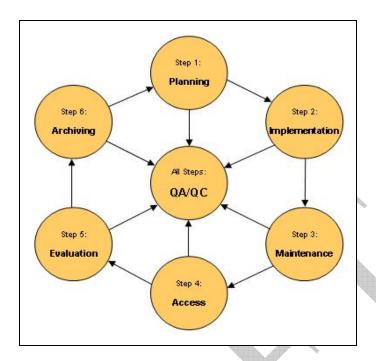


Figure 6.2. Diagram of the data life cycle, illustrating the major data management activities during the life of a project.

6.6.1 Planning

Planning is the first and one of the most important steps in the data life cycle. The planning phase can be a complex and arduous process. However, spending the time to meticulously plan all aspects of the project will save a considerable amount of time, effort, and money in the later phases of the project. During the planning phase:

- Goals and objectives of the project are determined and clearly stated.
- Ownership of the data and products is determined.
- A project record is created in the Network's project-tracking database.
- Inventories of related information are reviewed and rated for usefulness.
- Proposals and budgets are created and funding sources are determined.
- Work plans are created.
- Contracts, agreements, and permits are obtained.
- Protocols, SOPs, and guidelines are selected or developed, as needed.
- Quantitative and qualitative measures to collect are determined, and, if needed, parameters for those measurements identified.
- Databases, datasheets, metadata, and data dictionaries are designed.
- Deliverables are identified and due dates are determined.
- Data storage and dissemination methods are created.
- Timelines are determined.

6.6.2 Implementation

The implementation phase of the project is when the on-the-ground work begins. Field data collection is time-consuming, expensive, and if not managed properly provides ample opportunity to introduce errors. It is during this phase that we can begin to determine what data management methods are working, what methods need to be adjusted, and what methods need to be reassessed. During the implementation phase:

- Field crews, contractors, and additional personnel are hired and trained.
- Equipment is purchased and SOPs for equipment use and calibration are created.
- Data are collected and entered into databases. They undergo quality assessment (QA) and quality control (QC) processes and are certified, stored, and secured.
- Data are converted to information through statistical and GIS analyses, map development, creation of dataset catalogs and metadata, and preparation of reports.

6.6.3 Maintenance

In order to maintain the highest quality useable data, maintenance of the data and the products created from the data (metadata, databases and the administrative records) needs to occur at regular intervals. During this phase:

- Metadata, data catalogs, and data dictionaries will be evaluated to make sure they are upto-date and meet all previously outlined standards.
- Seasonal data will be reviewed prior to integration with the master databases to make sure they are complete and meet data quality standards.
- Records in the project database are updated.
- Data will be screened for sensitive information and protected from unauthorized use.
- Databases and datasheets are updated to meet current objectives.
- Known users of the information are informed of any revisions to the data or supporting documents.

6.6.4 Access

One of the core goals of most Klamath Network projects is to create information that can be utilized by park staff and the scientific community, providing them with up-to-date information about natural resources occurring in and around the parks. To do this job efficiently, a methodology must be in place to allow users easy access to tabular and spatial data, reports, and photographs collected during the project. In this phase:

- Products and data are distributed to a diversity of users including park staff, Network employees, SOU personnel, national I&M databases, and the scientific community on a predetermined timeline.
- Data are stored in a manner that is secure but allows for timely distribution when needed.
- Information created from the project is posted to or used to update national databases including NPSpecies, NatureBib, STORET, ANSC+, and NPS Data Store, as needed.

6.6.5 Evaluation

The technology, methodology, and perspectives used to create and implement a project are dynamic and can change on a regular basis. It is important to constantly review all the aspects of

a project to determine what is working, what needs to change, what needs to be added, and most importantly what can be done better or more efficiently. During this phase:

- Evaluation of the collection methodologies, protocols, SOPs, and guidelines is conducted to determine if they are still valid.
- Periodic evaluation of the data being collected takes place to determine if they are still needed and useful.
- Overall evaluation of the project is conducted to determine if the methodologies being used meet the goals and objectives of the project.
- Evaluation of the data management methodologies used to obtain, manage, disseminate, and archive the data is done to make sure they are still efficient.

6.6.6 Storage and Archiving

As stated in the 2006 NPS Management Policies, "Information about natural resources that is collected and developed will be maintained for as long as it is possible to do so. All forms of information collected through inventorying, monitoring, research, assessment, traditional knowledge, and management actions will be managed to professional NPS archival and library standards." The Network will utilize the infrastructure provided by Southern Oregon University and Redwood National Park to meet our archiving and storage needs. All Network information will be backed up on a nightly, weekly, and quarterly basis. Weekly and quarterly backups will be stored off campus and managed by Record Masters of Southern Oregon. Weekly backups will be stored for approximately two months while quarterly backups will be archived for one year. In addition, the Network will keep an archived copy of all project-related data on an external hard drive that will be stored on-site. This archived copy will be updated on a weekly basis if a change has occurred to any information. In order to preserve the data for long-term use, archived data must:

- Be secure and easily accessible to meet future requests (e.g., FOIA, park staff, and the scientific community).
- Include all documentation needed to understand the archived datasets and GIS information. This includes administrative documents, reports, metadata, and data dictionaries.
- Be stored in its original format and in a comma-delimited, American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) text file. ASCII files will include the content of each file, relationships that may occur between tables, attribute definitions, and associated documentation.

6.6.7 Quality Assurance and Quality Control

Data collected for the purpose of detecting a change in natural resources over time must be of the highest quality with little or no bias. Applying proper QA/QC standards to the entire data life cycle, from the planning phase through the archiving phase will allow the Klamath Network to provide high quality, accurate data for scientific analysis and to support natural resources management. In this phase:

• Metadata files created during the planning phase of the project will be updated through every stage of the project.

- Validation and verification methodologies will be used to protect information being collected, recorded, and processed.
- Completeness and accuracy of data will be determined prior to distribution or incorporation of those data into the master database.
- Domain values, pick lists, and various other quality control methods will be incorporated into the databases prior to data entry.
- Monitoring projects will have data consistency checks conducted to make sure data collected over multiple years can be integrated.
- Data will be reviewed at multiple levels to correct errors and determine missing values.
- The Data Manager will monitor project folders to ensure that all data are available and located in their proper place.

6.7 Water Quality Data

The water quality component of the Natural Resource Challenge requires networks to archive all physical, chemical, and biological water quality data in the NPS's STORET database maintained by the NPS Water Resources Division. To facilitate archiving data in STORET, the Water Resources Division has been developing a series of MicrosoftTM Access-based templates (called NPSTORET) for Networks to use to enter their water quality data. The Networks will send their data to the Water Resources Division on an annual basis for quality assurance and to upload into their copy of STORET and the Environmental Protection Agency's STORET National Data Warehouse (Figure 6.3).

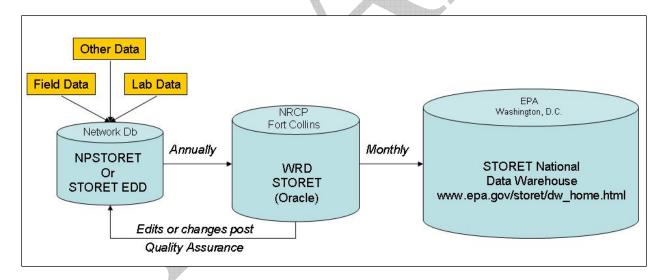


Figure 6.3. Simplified model of the Natural Resource Challenge vital signs water quality data flow.

6.8 Summary

The overall goal of our data management strategy is to provide data and information that is of high quality containing minimal errors and biases. In order to provide park staff, the public, and the scientific community accurate and reliable information in the most efficient manner the Klamath Network is implementing a data management strategy that utilizes the Network's Data

Management Plan, data guideline documents, and SOPs to instruct staff on the methods that need to be followed when collecting and managing data. The Network is confident that by following these processes we will be able to provide sound scientific information to current and future generations of park and Network staff in an effort to help manage the park ecosystems and inform the public.



Chapter 7: Data Analysis and Reporting

7.1 Overview

In a successful monitoring program, data are analyzed, interpreted, and provided to managers, decision-makers, and interested parties at regular intervals in a reporting format appropriate for each of these audiences. Effective interpretation and timely reporting of monitoring data and key findings requires clear standards for data collection and management as described in Chapter 6, and consistent schedules for data summary and analysis. This chapter presents an overview of the Klamath Network's approach for accomplishing these data analysis and reporting goals.

7.2 Data Analysis

The Klamath Network intends to use a variety of data analysis approaches to pursue the three main I&M monitoring goals for the Network: 1) to determine the current status and trends in the Network's vital signs of ecosystem health, 2) to provide early warning of abnormal conditions or impairment of select resources, and 3) to provide quality data to foster a better understanding of the dynamic nature and condition of park ecosystems. The sampling design and analyses are also based on the specific objectives for monitoring of each vital sign (Chapter 5).

It is important to remember that all monitoring is observational and the data cannot be analyzed to infer cause and effect relationships, as would be possible through experimental study. However, monitoring can, in addition to accomplishing the three goals stated above, provide important baseline information to guide adaptive management and to focus more rigorous research. In this section we discuss general analyses that will likely be used to pursue the three major vital signs goals. Detailed descriptions of data analysis and reporting procedures will be contained in the monitoring protocols for each vital sign.

7.2.1 Forms of Data and Assessment

Understanding status, trends, abnormal conditions, and ecosystem dynamics will require a broad, multifaceted program that analyzes both specific (univariate) parameters, and more integrative (multivariate) metrics to provide a comprehensive view of the ecosystems involved (Dale and Breyeler 2001). The Network's vital signs were selected to span this gradient from specific to integrative. Individual parameters that are particularly important, such as numbers of tree seedlings, abundance of individual bird species, or pH of streams will be analyzed and reported distinctly. There is increasing consensus, however, that single species or parameters do not adequately describe ecosystem level status, trends, or abnormalities (Barbour et al. 1995, Karr and Chu 1999, Dale and Beyeler 2001). Because we will be monitoring multiple parameters while in the field, multivariate data will also be available for condition assessments, and will compose the bulk of our analyses.

7.2.2 Determination of Status and Trends in Park Vital Signs

Estimates of the status and trends in park ecosystems will manifest themselves at different points in time. For most of our vital signs, the sampling has been designed to provide a probabilistic and spatially balanced sample over the park ecosystems. This approach will allow comprehensive estimates the status of vital signs and ecosystem condition after each sampling

period. These estimates will become increasingly precise as additional samples are collected in future years, when trend detection will also become increasingly feasible.

Status

In the early years of our program, we will be primarily concerned with evaluating the current status of the vital signs measured. In most cases, analyses will be spatial models that illustrate the mean abundances of target species and functional groups, or other parameters, such as stream pH, across the sampling frame. We will be concerned with several preliminary questions, including:

- 1. How do observed values of vital signs compare with historical values?
- 2. Do observed values exceed established regulatory standards, or hypothesized ecological thresholds?
- 3. What is the nature of the spatial autocorrelation (i.e., spatial dependence or directionality) in vital signs data?
- 4. What environmental factors function as covariates and influence the values of measurements?

Preliminary analyses and summary reports will include calculated means and variances of specific parameters, development of multivariate indices of ecosystem condition, and development of geostatistical models to display spatial patterns (McBean and Rovers 1998, Karr and Chu 1999, Maguire et al. 2005). Where the sampled data are continuous over space (e.g., bird abundance, pH in a stream network), geostatistical models will be developed to generate interpolated maps from point sampling data of the mean response variables and associated standard error terms (Maguire et al. 2005). They will also allow us to determine patterns of spatial autocorrelation in our data, a critical parameter to know when applying most statistical tests (Legendre et al. 2002). Correlation analyses will be conducted to explore the factors that best explain spatial variation in vital signs across the park landscapes (McBean and Rovers 1998).

Trend

Determination of significant trends in vital signs will require considerably more time than status, depending on the variance and rate of change. Our primary question with trend analyses will be:

1. Is there an observable change in a vital sign over time, i.e., direction and rate of change?

General tools for the determination of trend will range in complexity from application of general linear models for the determination of trend direction and significance in early years to time series analyses of longer-term datasets (Box and Jenkins 1976, Manly 2001). Geostatistical-temporal modeling (Kyriakidis and Journel 1999) may also be used to identify whether or not the spatial patterns in mean response are changing over time (e.g., to compare "maps" of mean values developed from different field seasons).

7.2.3 Detection of Abnormalities

To provide early warning of abnormal conditions and impairment of selected resources, we will need to develop a quantitative understanding of what is "normal" at different locations in the park landscapes. Although data collected in vital signs monitoring is expected to be critical for assessing risk to park ecosystems, it is important to note that determination of abnormality requires caution. Ecological systems are rarely in equilibrium (Pickett and White 1985, Wu and Louckes 1995), and human efforts to control natural variation have typically proven counterproductive (Holling and Meffe 1996). Exceptionally low or high values in most ecological parameters are part of the natural range of variation, and are to be expected. When sampling series are short, any estimates of the range in conditions are likely to be premature (Willis and Birks 2006). Moreover, unusual events may not be "abnormal," in fact they may be a critical part of a species' ecology. Acorn masting events are an important reproductive strategy in native oaks, and relatively infrequent, extreme events are important parts of the disturbance regime in most natural ecosystems (Benda and Dunne 1997, Moritz 1997). Consequently, evaluation of abnormal events will require careful consideration of the statistical properties of the vital signs measurements and collaboration with scientists familiar with the ecology of the system of concern.

As mentioned in <u>Chapter 1</u>, we intend to employ ecological integrity (Angermeier and Karr 1994) as an organizing concept for evaluating the condition of park ecosystems. Indices of biotic or ecological integrity have been developed for a number of ecosystem types and can include primarily species information or integrated multimetric indices that incorporate physical and biological data (Karr and Chu 1999). Such indices have been most successfully applied in aquatic ecosystems, where disturbance or pollution effects have been well studied. For example, the Index of Biotic Integrity (Karr 1981), an early multivariate index, was developed to monitor the condition of streams using fish and macroinvertebrate data, and was broadened to include stream channel and water quality parameters (Barbour et al. 1995, Karr and Chu 1999). More recently, the indices have been developed and applied in riparian and wetland environments (Innis et al. 2000), for terrestrial invertebrates (Kimberling et al. 2001), and for bird communities (O'Connell et al. 2000).

Most of our vital signs are designed to sample the structure, function, and composition of the ecosystems through collection of multivariate species and environmental data. We believe that Indices of Ecological Integrity (IEIs) developed from such multivariate data will provide excellent means to track changes in our ecosystems through time. While ideally the life history and environmental relationships of all the sampled organisms would be well understood before developing multivariate indices, such relationships can be deduced in the course of a monitoring program with consistent data collection and analysis procedures. We anticipate that multimetric integrity indices exist or can be developed to help us to evaluate information about our water quality, aquatic, intertidal, and landbird communities vital signs, and may also prove relevant for vegetation monitoring. The development and application of such IEIs will provide a defensible framework for understanding the characteristics of healthy ecosystems and detecting when abnormalities occur.

As the monitoring time series matures for each of our vital signs, the estimated mean, variance, and distributional forms will become increasingly robust and allow us to use traditional methods for detecting extreme values, such as outlier determination and control chart development

(McBean and Rovers 1998). In addition, compilation of historical data, where available, may help to augment the vital signs time series. For some vital signs, such as water quality, where stressors are known and critical thresholds established, risk assessment techniques will be employed (Johnson 1998). For other vital signs that indicate direct impacts to park ecosystems (e.g., non-native invasive species abundance, whitebark pine infection), we will need to develop or adapt thresholds for determining ecological change and for triggering management actions (Wright 1999, Bestelmeyer 2006), recognizing that it may be challenging (Groffman et al. 2006). For the remainder of the vital signs, we expect that determination of abnormal conditions will require both development of standardized IEIs as well as a sufficient monitoring duration to differentiate abnormal change form natural variation.

7.2.4 Evaluation of System Dynamics

As mentioned above, all ecosystems are dynamic, characterized by natural disturbance regimes (Pickett and White 1985, Wu and Loukes 1995, Poff et al. 1997), and long-term fluctuations in climate and biogeography (Whitlock and Bartlein 1997, Mohr et al. 2000, Weisberg and Swanson 2003). It is also known that this variation is important for biodiversity (Sousa 1979, Spies and Turner 1999), yet the dynamics are often highly nonlinear and vary with scale (Sarr et al. 2005). Much ecological literature has discussed the predictability of ecosystem changes through time, with some emphasizing the consistency in such processes as post-disturbance succession (Cowles 1899, Clements 1916, Bormann and Likens 1979), and others emphasizing stochastic influences and mechanisms that cause variation through time (Gleason 1926, Whittaker 1975). Current thinking is that both models have elements of truth; ecosystems often respond to disturbances in characteristic ways, but they can reorganize when new species enter or when critical environmental thresholds are exceeded (Holling 1973, Scheffer et al. 2001, Groffman et al. 2006). A clearer understanding of system dynamics that spans multiple spatial and temporal scales will help managers to conserve park ecosystems. We also expect that many interrelated dynamics may currently be affected by large scale human influences, such as climate change, that scientists are only beginning to understand (Parmesan 2006).

Vital signs monitoring data are certain to be of immense value in helping the parks to learn about the natural ecosystem dynamics, but it is unlikely that such an understanding will emerge from statistical procedures alone. Rather, it will evolve gradually through observations of directional changes in species composition following fire, floods, and other disturbances, measurements of non-native and sensitive species abundances over time, and close evaluation of spatial patterns (i.e., space for time observations). Observations of cyclical phenomena in monitoring time series will be noted and covariance with environmental variables will be analyzed (McBean and Rovers 1998), but our analyses will evolve along with our understanding of system dynamics in light of future ecological experiments that occur (Walters and Holling 1990, Gunderson and Holling 2001).

It is impossible to convey more than the briefest overview of the possible analyses or implications of the monitoring data through time. Much greater detail will be provided in monitoring protocols, reports, and peer-reviewed scientific publications that will be forthcoming. Ideally, the modest internal efforts of the Klamath I&M Program will foster collaborative research that yields findings and insights far beyond what can be conceived at this time or conveyed in this plan.

7.3 Reporting

Following the guidelines of the National Inventory and Monitoring Program, the Klamath Network has developed reporting requirements to ensure that it is meeting its objectives. A general overview is provided in this section with more specific requirements included in each protocol. This section includes information about the following categories of reporting tools:

- Annual reports
- Analysis and synthesis reports
- Program and protocol reviews
- Scientific journal articles and book chapters
- Interpretation and outreach
- Metadata

For many of these report categories we indicate the person who is responsible for the report (the initiator), analyses included, peer review requirements, and due date. These considerations clarify expectations for these reports and ensure that there is sufficient program accountability, documentation, and evaluation. How these reports fit into the larger schedule of Network activities is addressed in Chapter 9.

7.3.1 Annual Reports

The major purposes of annual reports are to:

- Summarize annual data and document monitoring activities for the year.
- Describe current condition of the resource.
- Document changes in monitoring protocols.
- Increase communication within the park and network.

These reports will be generated from automated data analyses developed for each monitoring project. Many of our monitoring programs will be active each year, and those programs will generate annual reports. However, some sampling regimes do not require annual reporting. Those programs will produce less frequent reports.

Features of annual reports include:

- Audience: Network staff, park staff (including administration), scientists working in parks.
- Review: internal network review.

7.3.2 Analysis and Synthesis Reports

The role of analysis and synthesis reports is to:

- Determine patterns/trends in condition of resources being monitored.
- Discover new characteristics of resources and correlations among resources being monitored.
- Analyze data to determine amount of change that can be detected by the type and level of sampling.
- Provide context, interpret data for the park within a multi-park, regional or national context.
- Recommend changes to management of resources (feedback for adaptive management).

These reports can provide critical insights into resource status and trends, which can then be used to inform resource management efforts and regional resource analyses. This type of analysis, more in depth than that of the annual report, requires several seasons of sampling data. Therefore, these reports are not written more frequently than every three to five years, for resources sampled annually. For resources sampled less frequently, or which have a particularly low rate of change, intervals between reports may be longer. It is important that results from all monitoring projects within and across all parks be integrated across disciplines in order to interpret changes to park resources. This will be accomplished with a network synthesis report produced at no more than 10-year intervals.

Features of analysis and synthesis reports include:

- Audience: superintendents, park resource managers, network staff, and external scientists.
- Review: external, blind peer-review with at least three subject-matter experts including one statistician.

7.3.3 Protocol Reviews

The purpose of protocol reviews is to:

- Review protocol design and products to determine whether changes are needed.
- Perform quality assurance and peer review.

Reviews will be conducted at the first 5-year Analysis and Synthesis Report and in conjunction with future Analysis and Synthesis Reports as needed, but at least at 10-year intervals. Because protocols must be reviewed in light of the data they produce, it is most efficient to review protocols coincident with analysis and synthesis of its results. Features of such protocol reviews include:

- Outside contractor or academic enlisted to conduct program assessment (e.g., power analyses of the data) and report findings.
- Broad spectrum of peers invited to review the Analysis and Synthesis Report, power analysis, and protocol.
- Peers invited to a workshop to discuss the protocol, the analyses to which it was subjected, whether or not it is meeting project goals, possible improvements and changes.
- Program manager or contractor writes report summarizing workshop, circulates to participants, and posts final report on Network web site, sends to NPS regional and national program offices.
- Audience: project leads and Network Coordinator.
- Review: external, blind peer-review with at least three subject-matter experts including one statistician.

7.3.4 Program Reviews

The purposes of program reviews are to:

- Perform periodic formal reviews of operations and results (at 5-year intervals).
- Undertake the quality assurance and peer review process.

The Network Coordinator will initiate the Network Monitoring Program reviews. The goal of these reviews is for highly qualified professionals to evaluate the program. Features include:

- Program manager/network team summarizes program and activity to date including summary of results and outcomes of protocol reviews.
- Invitees discuss the program, whether it is meeting program goals, and possible improvements.
- Program manager develops strategy with KLMN Technical Committee on which recommendations to implement, how, and when.

Typical topics addressed are a general review of program efficacy, accountability, scientific rigor, contribution to adaptive park management and larger scientific endeavors, outreach, partnerships, and products. These reviews cover monitoring results over a long period of time, as well as program structure and function, to determine whether the program is achieving its objectives, and also whether the list of objectives is still relevant, realistic, and sufficient.

Other features of program reviews include:

- Audience: superintendents, resource managers, network staff, NPS Monitoring Program managers, and external scientists.
- Review: external, blind peer review with at least five subject-matter experts including one statistician and one monitoring program manager.

7.3.5 Scientific Journal Articles and Book Chapters

This aspect of the program will be directed by the program managers, and is more at their discretion than previous reports. Publishing scientific journal articles and book chapters is primarily conducted to communicate advances in knowledge. It is also a very important, widely acknowledged means of quality assurance and quality control, via the academic peer-review process. Putting a program's methods, analyses, and conclusions under the scrutiny of a scientific journal's peer-review process is basic to science and one of the best ways to ensure scientific rigor. This may be an important role for USGS and other scientific partners. Scientific journal articles and book chapters produced by Network's efforts are tracked by the KLMN monitoring program; new publications are listed as part of the Annual Administrative Report and Work Plan (see Annual Reports section), which is sent to the regional and national offices each year. Additionally, all scientific journal articles and book chapters will be entered into the NatureBib database. Principal investigators of recently published work in the KLMN frequently make presentations at professional workshops and conferences, and will be invited to present their findings at Technical Committee and Board of Directors meetings.

Features of scientific journals and books include:

- Audience: scientific community.
- Review: peer-review conducted by journal or book editor.

7.3.6 Interpretation and Outreach

Scientific information gained from monitoring programs usually requires a concerted effort to be translated for the general public. Through interpretive programs, the Outreach Partnership with Southern Oregon University, the Crater Lake Science and Learning Center, park Natural History Associations, and the Klamath Network's own outreach vehicles, the I&M Program will work to disseminate its findings each year. Occasional, theme-based symposia will be organized by Network staff to invite principal investigators working in the parks to present their monitoring

results and discuss their implications. In the future, the Network plans to produce brochures and fact sheets regarding monitoring and its implications.

Features of interpretation and outreach include:

- Audience: the interested public.
- Review: reviewed by project leads for accuracy.



Chapter 8: Administration/Implementation of the Monitoring Program

8.1 Overview

This chapter describes the Klamath Network's plan for administering the monitoring program. The Network has developed a five-year (FY 2008–2012) plan under which we will develop protocols for and begin monitoring of our core vital signs. In this chapter, we describe the governing bodies that will guide the Network and the staff that will implement the monitoring. We also explain how network and park operations will be integrated and in-house fieldwork carried out. We conclude by describing partnership opportunities and the periodic review process for the program.

8.2 Administration

8.2.1 Governing Structure

The governance of the Klamath Network Inventory and Monitoring Program is directed by a charter that defines permanent and *ad hoc* advisory and decision-making bodies. These groups are composed of senior administrative and natural resource staff in each park of the Network, with periodic participation by USGS and university scientists.

Klamath Network Charter

The KLMN charter describes the process used to plan, manage, and evaluate the monitoring program within the Network in accordance with the intent and purpose of the National Park Service Natural Resource Challenge. It stipulates the governance structure of the Klamath Network I&M Program and provides a schedule for participation by Superintendents and Natural Resource Chiefs of each park, as well as selected Pacific West Regional representatives. Three executive and advisory bodies play important roles in the governance, administration, and scientific guidance of the KLMN I&M Program, the Board of Directors, Technical Advisory Committee, and the Scientific Advisory Committee.

Board of Directors

Overall direction for the Klamath Network is provided by a Board of Directors. The Board is composed of all six Park Superintendents, the Deputy Regional Director for the Pacific West Region, two rotating Natural Resource Chiefs, and the Regional and Network Inventory and Monitoring Coordinators. The Board meets each year in early winter following the fall Technical Advisory Committee meeting to facilitate action on any recommendations for the fiscal year. Final authority on the overall program rests with the Board of Directors.

Technical and Science Advisory Committees

The Network has an eight-member Technical Advisory Committee composed of Natural Resource Chiefs from each of the six parks, the Network Coordinator, who serves as chair, and the Data Manager. The Technical Committee meets once per year, usually in September, to discuss and make decisions on the technical aspects of designing and implementing the program for the coming fiscal year, and to find ways to integrate inventory and monitoring with other

research or management efforts. For decisions on permanent hiring of staff, significant allocations of funds, or the overall direction of the program, the committee makes recommendations to the Board of Directors. A Science Advisory Committee composed of the Technical Advisory Committee and additional NPS, USGS, and university scientists meet on an *ad-hoc* basis to provide scientific reviews, comments, and advice to the program.

8.2.2 Staffing Plan

The formal staffing requirements for the program have been developed by the Network to provide adequate staffing resources to implement the monitoring program while retaining flexibility for future adjustments. Generally, a core staff will provide day-to-day management and oversight of the program, with supplemental staffing from the parks, universities, nonprofit partners, and other agencies.

Core Network Staff

Four positions compose the "core staff" of the KLMN, including three technical professionals, the Network Coordinator, Data Manager, and Aquatic Ecologist, and a Program Assistant who assists them. The technical professionals share responsibility for vital signs planning and, together with affiliated park staff and cooperators, will implement the program. The professional staffing structure has been designed with the expertise required to design, execute, evaluate, and report findings about a vital signs monitoring program encompassing terrestrial, subterranean, freshwater, marine ecosystems. The Network Coordinator and Data Manager positions are permanent; the Aquatic Ecologist and Program Assistant positions will be temporary, with the possibility of conversion to permanent in the future.

Supplemental Staffing

In addition to the Network's core staff, we expect to hire a number of seasonal employees to implement the fieldwork required by the program. They will be supervised by the core staff or by designated program leads in each park. In addition, outside entities will have an important role in implementing the program. During the three-phase monitoring plan and protocol development process, Southern Oregon University provided the Network with a Technical Writer/Ecologist, and GIS analyst, while USGS provided an Aquatic Ecologist. We expect that the continued services of the three will be required during the first years of program implementation. In addition, we will utilize staff from University of California, Santa Cruz for sampling of intertidal zones, and from the Klamath Bird Observatory to conduct bird community sampling. Figure 9.1 illustrates the expected staffing structure at full program implementation (FY 2009 and beyond). The roles, responsibilities, affiliations, durations, and duty stations of all supplemental staff will depend on the requirements described in the monitoring protocols. Interagency agreements, cooperative agreements, and contracts are used to obtain supplemental staff.

Roles and Responsibilities

Because the program integrity depends upon rigorous designs and implementation at all stages, all employees and partners will need to be aware of the standards and time required to accomplish monitoring objectives. The Network's core staff will develop and update protocols and standard operating procedures for all vital signs to ensure that all employees are aware of programmatic expectations. Decisions to identify affiliated park-based positions such as project leaders and/or crew members will only be exercised when the following requirements can be met: 1) capable staff already exist at the park and are available to conduct monitoring; 2) the park can provide work space; 3) there are mechanisms in place to assure that the work can be completed following the guidelines in the monitoring protocol and data management plan and the schedule established in the annual work plan; and 4) the employee's supervisor has approved of the activity and ensured the KLMN Board of Directors that the park can allocate the employee adequate time and logistical support to fulfill the obligation to the I&M Program.

Managing individual performance and seeing that park employees carry out their assigned duties according to established protocols is the responsibility of their park supervisor. Communication is especially important when a park employee is assigned to the responsibility of collecting data for the Network. In these instances, it is essential that the primary supervisor interact with the Network Coordinator to develop and evaluate employee performance, as established in the annual employee performance plan.

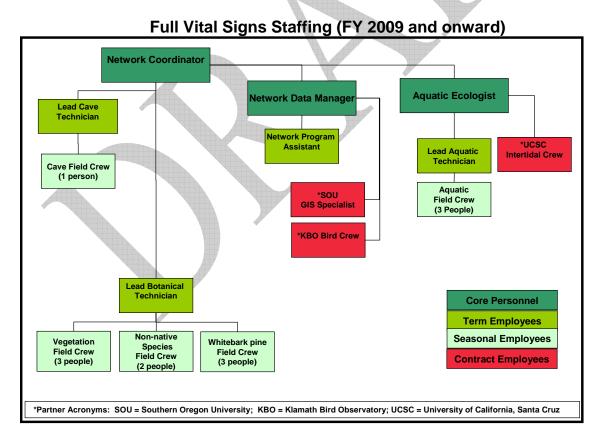


Figure 8.1. Staffing structure for the Klamath Network at full program implementation (FY 2009 and onward).

Training and Professional Development

All dedicated staff charged with executing the I&M Program will be expected to possess or obtain adequate field, planning, data management, writing, and statistical skills necessary to complete their duties. Professional development through personalized training programs, workshops, and personal study curricula will be made available to all program staff and will be reviewed and updated in annual personal development plans. Where possible, the Network will arrange workshops that allow for the efficient training of core and supplemental staff.

8.2.3 Administrative Structure

Administrative Support and Office Location

The Network receives its base administrative support from its host park, Redwood National and State Parks. This support includes personnel functions such as: 1) position classification, recruitment, human resources, and development; 2) budget management and contracting; 3) information technology support, and 4) property management and inventory. Most cooperative agreements are coordinated and processed directly through the Cooperative Ecosystem Studies Unit Offices, with some administrative assistance provided by the Pacific West Regional Office. The Klamath Network provides funding through one such agreement to pay for electronic infrastructure to maintain an administrative office on the campus of Southern Oregon University.

Supervision

The Network Coordinator is supervised by the Pacific West Regional I&M Coordinator, with yearly review and input by the KLMN Board of Directors. The Network Coordinator supervises the other NPS employees in the program, who supervise seasonal employees operating under each vital sign subprogram (Fig. 9.1).

8.3 Operations

The NPS I&M Program is intended to be a well-designed system that provides adequate resources for planning data collection, management, analysis, reporting, and periodic program review and refinement. As such, the operational details of the program must begin with a mastery by every project manager of the monitoring objectives and schedule for the vital signs, as well as a detailed knowledge of the staffing resources, schedule, sampling locations, and logistical needs for each phase of sampling. In a given year, several phases of activities will be required from pre-field preparations through data entry and validation.

8.3.1 Pre-Field Preparations

For each year that sampling is scheduled, the project manager for a given vital sign will need to review the expected timing and locations for field visits within the parks, evaluate staffing, housing, and vehicle requirements, and obtain and check necessary field equipment. By early winter, the project manager should contact resource and administration staff in each park to inform them of the field schedule and any logistical needs.

8.3.2 Field Sampling

Safety of field personnel is the first concern that needs to be recognized in all phases of the planning and implementation process. Not all safety concerns are self-evident. Numerous safety concerns may arise as field personnel have potential to contact waterborne pathogens, chemicals and potentially hazardous plants and animals. Weather conditions can be extreme. Fieldwork requires an awareness of potential hazards and knowledge of basic safety procedures. It is the responsibility of the project manager to ensure that field crews are familiar with all relevant safety procedures, to provide for safety checklists, and to ensure that employees are referred to Chapter A9 of the USGS National Field Manual for recommended safety procedures. In addition, employees are instructed to contact local park safety officers for current information regarding local problems or issues such as disease, wildlife, fire, or avalanche hazards.

8.3.3 Training

Because it is likely that the program will endure considerable turnover in staff through time, particularly for seasonal employees, effort will need to be placed on training new staff and on refreshing permanent or returning seasonal staff each year. Well-trained employees are essential for program continuity and to maintain a successful quality assurance program. The development of standard operating procedures alone does not guarantee that high-quality data will be collected. A training program will assist field and laboratory staff in obtaining a clearer understanding of planned data collection procedures and should include a trainee certification process. Core network staff will see that employees engaged in monitoring have adequate skills and experience to conduct monitoring.

8.3.4 Field equipment

The I&M Program will provide the equipment and supplies necessary to conduct monitoring of each vital sign. Property and equipment will be managed according to NPS property management guidelines. Sensitive property (e.g., cameras, computers, GPS units, radios, and binoculars) will be managed as accountable property. The purchase of equipment likely to depreciate will be scheduled to reduce the impact of replacing substantial amounts of equipment in any given year. Calibration of equipment will follow manufacture directions and will be included as part of an appendix or SOP to the relevant monitoring protocol. Vehicles will normally be leased through General Services Administration, unless the KLMN Board of Directors decides to purchase one or more field vehicles in the future.

8.3.5 Laboratory Analysis

Where laboratory analyses are required to obtain monitoring data, such as for water quality and aquatic community monitoring samples, consistent processing standards will be stipulated in the protocol for inclusion in any cooperative agreements or contracts with universities or private laboratories. Field crews will be trained in relevant SOPs for specimen collection to ensure that samples and vouchers are properly obtained and archived.

8.4 Integration and Partnerships

The Klamath Network Board of Directors and Technical Advisory Committee meet each year to ensure that I&M activities are integrated within the larger context of park management. Either at the annual Board of Directors meeting or soon thereafter, the Board Chair and Network Coordinator meet with the Interpretation Chiefs from all six parks to discuss collaborative opportunities for outreach and education. In addition, the Network Coordinator and other I&M staff maintain ongoing communication with technical leads from the Fire Program, the Crater Lake Science and Learning Center, and Exotic Plant Management Teams to share details of the Network's operations and potential collaborative opportunities. The Network Coordinator also participates in the preliminary review of network-related research proposals, to help keep abreast of research needs, share technical advice, and clarify relationships between I&M activities and park information needs.

The KLMN I&M Program has established and proven partnerships with a variety of federal and nonfederal partners. We intend to maintain and expand our array of partnerships and collaborations in all stages of our program, from scoping and project planning to collaborative field research and scientific publication. Active partnerships will help us bring the best possible science to the service of the parks and ensure that our efforts contribute to regional science, conservation, and education.

8.5 Periodic Program Review

A schedule for periodic review of the monitoring program will be added to the Network's charter to encourage continuous improvement and modification of the program. Presently, the first Program Review is planned for FY 2009. Additional reviews will be conducted at five-year intervals thereafter, and may also be initiated by the Network Coordinator. Each Program Review will consist of an external, blind peer-review with at least five subject-matter experts including one statistician and one monitoring program manager. Reviews will focus on scientific rigor, implementation of the program, and achievement of programmatic goals and specific monitoring objectives. After each review, the KLMN Technical Advisory Committee will evaluate which program review recommendations to implement, how, and when. The evaluation will be presented to the KLMN Board of Directors for review and approval before work commences.

Periodic protocol reviews will be the chief means to assess and adjust individual elements of the monitoring program. Protocol reviews will commence after the first (3-5 yr) Analysis and Synthesis Report (Chapter 7) is issued for a given vitals sign. Depending upon the vital sign, the review process may involve outside scientists with specific knowledge of the subject material and no obvious conflicts of interest with respect to the topic. Alternatively, a workshop panel may be convened to review the protocol. After each review, the Technical Advisory Committee will prepare a list of actions to meet the peer review recommendations.

Additional formal and informal peer review will occur during the scientific publication process, presentations at scientific meetings, and discussions with other monitoring program staff. All input that might improve the I&M Program will be presented to the Technical Advisory Committee for further discussion, and possible consideration by the Board of Directors..

Chapter 9: Schedule

9.1 Overview

In the first few years of the program, we must move from conceptual and logistical planning to protocol development and peer-review to monitoring implementation. This chapter describes the schedule for implementing the Klamath Network Vital Signs Monitoring Program and for conducting field sampling. We describe the issues that must be addressed before each protocol can be implemented, along with target years for implementation in the subsequent tables.

9.2 Implementation and Sampling Schedules

The planning process for most of the vital signs is already underway. General goals and monitoring objectives have been prepared in Protocol Development Summaries for all the core vital signs (Appendix O). In Table 9-1, we describe key issues that remain to be addressed in establishing and implementing protocols for each of the 10 core vital signs and provide a target year for implementation. Similar to the phased process each network takes to develop a monitoring plan, the KLMN is taking a phased approach to the implementation of vital signs monitoring. At present, we anticipate that the protocols will be implemented in two phases, the first starting in FY 2008, the second beginning in FY 2009. Two additional vital signs elements are being considered for implementation after FY 2009, but pursuit of these elements will depend upon the outcome of current research (for aspen stands), cost-effective collaborative monitoring opportunities (for terrestrial amphibians), and the availability of sufficient funding. The Klamath Network will conduct periodic data analysis for the unfunded Air Quality and Climate vital signs in correlation with the analysis and synthesis reports that will be completed every 3 to 5 years (Chapter 7). Data for these analyses will be collected from a variety of established organizations including the Western Regional Climate Center, the National Climatic Data Center, and the NPS Air Resources Division. In assigning a target year for protocol implementation, we have estimated the time required to resolve remaining informational or logistical needs through pilot studies, database development, plot installation, equipment purchase and calibration, and hiring and training of staff. For the five vital signs we plan to begin monitoring in FY 2008, we have reasonable confidence that such needs can be met by early FY 2008. The remaining protocols will require further planning and research prior to implementation.

Table 9.2 depicts the expected frequency and timing of sampling for the ten core vital signs. Most of our sampling will occur in the summer season, with selected vital signs also being monitored in the other seasons. This approach will allow data analysis, synthesis, and reporting activities for most vital signs to occur each winter.

Table 9.1. Major tasks required for implementation of the vital signs protocols for the Klamath Network I&M Program. The leftmost column lists the year that protocol development begins and the rightmost column lists the target implementation year.

Year	Vital Sign	Key Issues to be Addressed before Monitoring is Implemented	Implementation Year
FY 2006	Water quality	Elements of several existing protocols will be adopted to develop the Integrated Water quality	FY 2008
	Aquatic Communities	/ Aquatic Communities Protocol (IWAC). IWAC Protocol is being adapted from a variety or existing sources, including the North Coast and Cascades Network lake sampling and the EPA EMAP streams protocols.	FY 2008
	Intertidal	The Intertidal Protocol is being adapted for REDW from the established protocols of the MARINe (Multi-Agency Rocky INtertidal Network) program, which trace their development in large part to monitoring protocols established at Channel Islands National Park.	FY 2008
	Vegetation	The Vegetation Monitoring Protocol began in FY 2006 and a draft peer-review ready vegetation protocol will be produced by 3/31/2007. It still needs to be peer reviewed, field tested, and refined before full implementation.	FY 2009
FY 2007	Non-native Invasive Species	Background research to support development of a protocol began in FY 2006. The protocol still needs to be written and field tested.	FY 2009
	Bird Communities	Analysis of two seasons of point count and five years of mistnetting data are underway, with a protocol to be adapted in FY 2007. Submission of a draft protocol is expected by 3/31/2006, with peer review and refinement needed thereafter.	FY 2008
	Land use / landcover	Adoption and refinement of a Land use / Landcover Protocol will begin in FY 2007, with completion expected by summer 2007.	FY 2008
FY 2008	Cave Entrance Communities	Initial scoping has begun for development of an Integrated Cave Monitoring Protocol. Initial planning and selection of a Principal Investigator will begin in FY 2007. Protocol	FY 2009
	Cave Environment	development will begin in FY 2008.	FY 2009
	Whitebark pine	Whitebark pine monitoring protocols exist and will need to be adapted to meet the needs of the Network. We expect to begin the formal protocol development process in FY 2008.	FY 2009
FY 2009	Keystone Species- Aspen Stands	The Network is conducting a problem analysis of aspen stand condition in LAVO and CRLA. Our decision to implement long-term monitoring of aspen communities will depend upon the general findings of that study, due for completion in July 2008.	?
	Keystone Species- Amphibians	Aquatic amphibians will be monitored as part of the IWAC Protocol. We are beginning discussion with scientists in the USGS Amphibian Monitoring Research Initiative (ARMI) to evaluate the feasibility of collaborative monitoring of terrestrial amphibians	?

Table 9.2. Annual frequency and timing of sampling for the ten vital signs the KLMN plans to begin monitoring in FY 2008-9.

Vital Sign	Sample Type	Interval	Month											
			January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Non-native Invasive Species	FS	2 yr				////	////	////	////	////	////			
Keystone Species- Whitebark pine	FS	2 yr			4			//	////	////	//	•		
Vegetation Communities	FS	5 yr				////	////	////	////	////	////			
Bird Communities	PC, MN	2 yr, 1 yr					////	////	11	11	11			
Intertidal Communities	FS	1 yr				*		11				*		<u>/ /</u>
Aquatic Communities	FS	1 yr/5 yr		A			7	//	////	////	//			
Cave Entrance Communities	FS	2 yr						//_	////	////	//			
Water Quality	FS	1 yr/5 yr						//	////	////	//			
Land Cover & Land Use	Remote Sensing	5 yr	11	11	//									<u>/ /</u>
Cave Environmental Conditions	FS	2 yr				*		//	////	////	//	*		
^U Air Quality		5 yr	11	11	11		_							//
UClimate //// = Fulltime		5 yr	//	//	//									//

^{//// =} Fulltime

^{//=} Part-time

^{* =} Single park visit (data download from automated instrumentation).

FS = Field sampling

PC = Point counts

MN = Mistnetting

U= Unfunded vital sign

Chapter 10: Budget

10.1 Budget Overview

In this chapter, we present a five-year budget for the Klamath Network monitoring program. Two primary sources of funding support the Klamath Network I&M Program. They are the vital signs monitoring funds \$796,200 per year from the Natural Resource Challenge, and \$76,000 per year for water quality monitoring provided by the NPS Water Resources Division.

Natural Resource Challenge funds for the program are held in Washington Office base accounts and transferred annually through the Pacific West Regional Office to Redwood National and State Parks, the Network's host park. The Klamath Network Coordinator manages all funds, with oversight from the Board of Directors and assistance from the Budget Officer at Redwood. The Board approves the Annual Work Plan, with input from the Technical Advisory Committee. This work plan directs expenditure of funds to projects, parks, and offices.

10.2 Implementing the Vital Signs Program

Here we provide a view of the projected program budget during the first five years of operation after review and approval of our plan. We anticipate that this period will begin in FY 2008. By showing a five-year period, we can illustrate the phasing in of our vital signs, as well as the variation in allocations across years. All of our vital signs will be monitored at five-year or shorter revisit intervals (Chapter 4), so a complete monitoring cycle for all vital signs is included. Table 10.1 shows the network budget using the same expense categories networks use when preparing the Annual Administrative Reports and Work Plans that are submitted to Congress. We anticipate that the annual vital signs and water quality appropriations will be fixed, with the exception of cost of living adjustments for federal employees. During our first five years of implementation, we anticipate allocating 46-64% of the budget annually to personnel. This personnel expenditure includes permanent staff, term staff, and seasonal help for field sampling.

Cooperative agreements will be used to obtain staffing for several of our vitals signs and for maintaining the network computer infrastructure at Southern Oregon University. Expenditures on agreements will range between 13-20% of the annual budget during the five-year period. We intend to purchase major equipment for all vital signs in the program in 2008, when approximately 20% of the total funding will go to operations and equipment. Thereafter, we expect operations and equipment to range between 10-15% of the annual budget. Travel is expected to consume 3-6%, and miscellaneous and contingency expenses between < 5% and 9% of the annual budget. Some variation in miscellaneous and contingency expenses occurs due to alternating sampling intensities for different years and changes in staffing costs through time.

Table 10.1. Annual budget for the Klamath Network I&M Program with income and major expenses, 2008-2012. All values are in \$1000s.

Income and Expenditures (X \$1000					
Category	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Income					
Vital Sign Monitoring	796	796	796	796	796
Water Quality	76	76	76	76	76
Projected Cost of Living Adjustments	0	12	30	49	69
Total Income	872	884	903	921	941
				47	
Personnel					
Permanent Positions					
Network Coordinator (GS-12)	94	99	104	109	115
Data Manager (GS-11)	79	83	87	92	96
<u> </u>					
Term Positions					
Aquatic Ecologist (GS-11)	77	81	85	89	94
Program Assistant (GS-7)	58	61	64	67	70
Lead Biotech (GS-7; 0.75 FTE)	30	46	48	51	53
Temporary Positions		4			
Field Sampling Crews	66	194	163	188	173
Total Staff Costs	405	564	551	596	601
Agreements					
Network Office Infrastructure	23	24	24	25	26
Bird Monitoring (Klamath Bird Obs.)	70	30	70	30	70
Land Use & Land Cover Change	30				
Intertidal Monitoring (UC Santa Cruz)	30	30	30	30	30
Network Outreach (SOU)	30	31			
Total Agreement Costs	183	115	124	85	126
Operations/Equipment	175	108	104	112	110
Travel	31	54	49	54	52
▼					
Miscellaneous & Contingencies	78	43	74	74	51
Total Francischer	070	004	000	004	044
Total Expenditures	872	884	903	921	941

The Klamath Network has explored a variety of implementation schedules for the vital signs program. It was clear under all scenarios we have considered that costs will increase through time and the amount available for vital signs implementation will decrease proportionately. It was equally apparent that what seems feasible in the first several years of the program may prove untenable in the future unless flexibility is maintained. Consequently, we have chosen to develop a fiscally conservative program that will ensure that the program can accomplish its goal of monitoring vital signs through time with the appropriation provided. We used the following considerations in the preparation of the program budget:

- 1. All vital signs must remain within 10% of projected funding levels at ten years into the program.
- 2. Costs of permanent and term employees will increase at 5% per year.
- 3. Temporary employee salaries and all other expenses will increase at 3% per year.
- 4. Agreements will not adjust annually, but will be renegotiated at 5-year intervals to reflect real inflation rates.
- 5. All vital signs monitoring can be conducted with Natural Resource Challenge and Water Resources Division funds.
- 6. All vital signs measurements can be conducted by network-funded field crews or partners. Augmentation of network crews with park-based staff will be conducted where they can meet the requirements discussed in <u>chapter 8</u>, <u>section 8.2.2</u>.
- 7. Funds for miscellaneous and contingency expenses will be maintained at approximately 1-5% of the annual budget to address periodic and nonrecurring expenses, such as protocol and program review, equipment replacement or repair, and to obtain outside assistance with development or review of Analysis and Synthesis Reports.
- 8. Partnerships and additional funding will be pursued wherever feasible to augment the vital signs measurements.

Initial projections have shown that full implementation of all ten vital signs monitoring each year will be impossible with the fiscal resources available. As a result, the Network has discussed the implications of different sampling frequencies for each vital sign. For all vital signs except intertidal monitoring, annual sampling was not considered essential to meeting our data analysis and reporting goals (Chapter 7). However, annual field visits will be necessary for those vital signs that will utilize large sample sizes in extensive panel designs (i.e., vegetation, aquatic communities, and water quality). For the remaining vital signs, we expect to conduct fieldwork in alternate years or to alternate sampling intensity by year to increase affordability and logistical efficiency. Figure 10.1 shows the costs of core staffing, fixed infrastructure and outreach, miscellaneous and contingency expenses, and the annual allocation toward each vital sign from FY 2008-2012.

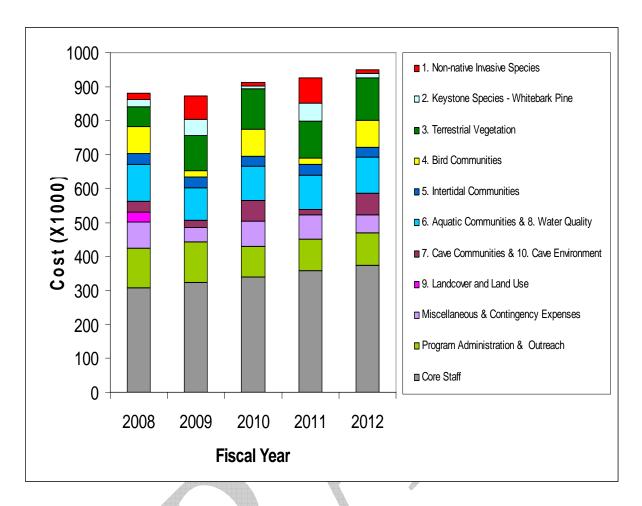


Figure 10.1. Annual project budgets for each of the top ten vital signs, fixed costs (i.e., core staff, program administration, outreach), and miscellaneous and contingency expenses for FY 2008-2012. Vital sign ranks are given in the legend. Integrated vital signs are presented together with the ranks of both vital signs included.

10.3 Program Development

To augment the modest budgets that the program allows for each vital sign, we will actively pursue additional funding and collaborative relationships with the parks, other NPS programs, and outside partners wherever feasible and appropriate. In many cases, supplemental staffing and funding relationships will be short-term in nature, with specific research, inventory, or monitoring objectives that supplement our vital signs goals. When sources of permanent funding or staffing can be located, they will be incorporated into the vital signs budget in future amendments to the monitoring plan. All changes to the monitoring plan will undergo review by the Klamath Network Technical Advisory Committee and ratification by the Klamath Network Board of Directors.

Chapter 11: Literature Cited

- Acker, S., M. Brock, K. Fuhrmann, J. Gibson, T. Hofstra, L. Johnson, J. Roth, D. Sarr, and E. Starkey. 2002. A study plan to inventory vascular plants and vertebrates: Klamath Network, National Park Service. Unpublished Report available from the Klamath Network, Ashland, OR.
- Agee, J.K. 1991. Fire history along an elevational gradient in the Siskiyou Mountains, Oregon. *Northwest Science* 65: 188-199.
- Albritton, D.L., L.G. Meira Filho, U. Cubasch, X. Dai, Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, B.
 Hewitson, J.T. Houghton, I. Isaksen, T. Karl, M. McFarland, V.P. Meleshko, J.F.B.
 Mitchell, M. Noguer, B.S. Nyenzi, M. Oppenheimer, J.E. Penner, S. Pollonais, T.
 Stocker, and K.E. Trenberth. 2001. Technical Summary. In Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding,
 D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson,
 editors. Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group I
 to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
 Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- Alt, D.D., and D.W. Hyndman. 1978. Roadside Geology of Oregon. Mountain Press, Missoula, MT.
- Angermeier, P.L., and J.R. Karr. 1994. Biological integrity versus biological diversity as policy directives: protecting biotic resources. *BioScience* 44: 690–697.
- Arnold, Jon, Wildlife Biologist, Lassen Volcanic National Park. Personal communication. July 28, 2004.
- Atzet, T., D.E. White, L.A. McCrimmon, P.A. Martinez, P.R. Fong, and V.D. Randall. 1996. Field guide to the forested plant associations of southwestern Oregon. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Region, Portland, OR. R6-NR-ECOL-TP-17-96.
- Ayres, M.P., and M.J. Lombardero. 2000. Assessing the consequences of global change for forest disturbance from herbivores and pathogens. *The Science of the Total Environment* 262: 263-286.
- Baker, W.L., and D. Ehle. 2001. Uncertainty in surface-fire history: The case of ponderosa pine forests in the western United States. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 31: 1205-1226.
- Bakker, E. 1971. An Island Called California, An Ecological Introduction to its Natural Communities. Second edition. University of California Press, Berkeley, California, USA.
- Barbour, M.G., and J. Major. 1977. Terrestrial Vegetation of California. John Wiley and Sons, New York.
- Barbour, M.J., B. Stribling, and J.R. Karr. 1995. Multimetric approach for establishing biocriteria and measuring biological function. Pages.63-77 in W. Davis and T. Simon, editors. Biologial Assessment and Criteria- Tools for Water Resource Planning and Decision Making. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, LA. USA.

- Benda, L., and T. Dunne. 1997. Stochastic forcing of sediment supply to channel networks from landsliding and debris flow. *Water Resources Research* 33: 2849–2863.
- Bennett, A.J., K.C. Oakley, and D.C. Mortenson. 2003. Phase I Report-Vital Signs Monitoring Plan: Southwest Alaska Network. Unpublished report on file. Southwest Alaska Inventory and Monitoring Program. National Park Service, Anchorage, AK.
- Bestelmeyer, B.T. 2006. Threshold concepts and their use in rangeland management and restoration: the good, the bad, and the insidious. *Restoration Ecology* 14: 325-329.
- Bestelmeyer, B.T., J.R. Miller, and J.A. Wiens. 2003. Applying species diversity theory to land management. *Ecological Applications* 13: 1750–1761.
- Blakesley, J., and B.R. Noon. 1999. Demographic parameters of the California Spotted Owl on the Lassen Forest; preliminary results (1990-1998). Summary report to the U.S. Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station, Arcata, California.
- Bond, W.J., and B.W. van Wilgen. 1996. Fire and Plants. Chapman and Hall, London, U.K. 263 pp.
- Bormann, F.H., and G.E. Likens. 1979. Pattern and Process in a Forested Ecosystem. Springer-Verlag, New York, New York. 253 pp.
- Bossard, C.R., J.M. Randall, and M.C. Hoshovsky. 2000. Invasive plants of California's Wildlands. University of California Press, Berkeley, Ca.
- Box, G., and G. Jenkins. 1976. Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control. Holden-Day, San Francisco, CA. 575 pp.
- Bridy, L., E. Perry, T. Shepherd, and R. Truitt. 2005. Klamath Network Data Mining Phase II Protocol. Available from the Klamath Network, National Park Service, Ashland, OR. 16 pp.
- Bryson, R.A., and F.K. Hare, editors. 1974. Climates of North America. Amsterdam, Elsevier. *World survey of climatology* 11: 420 p.
- Burgess, S.S.O., and Dawson, T.E. 2004. The contribution of fog to the water relations of *Sequoia sempervirens* (D. Don): foliar uptake and prevention of dehydration. *Plant*, *Cell & Environment* 27: 1023-1034.
- Bury, R.B., and C.A. Pearl. 1999. Klamath-Siskiyou herpetofauna: biogeographic patterns and conservation strategies. *Natural Areas Journal* 19: 341-350.
- Busch, D.E., and J.C. Trexler (Editors). 2003. Monitoring Ecosystems: Interdisciplinary approaches for evaluating ecoregional initiatives. Island Press, Covelo, CA.
- California Department of Fish and Game. 2001. Species and Natural Communities Monitoring and Assessment Program. Available via internet at (http://www.dfg.ca.gov/habitats/rap/pdf/resassessprogram.pdf) Accessed 12 December 2006.

- Ceres. 2004. California Nearshore Waters and Open Ocean. California Coastal Commission's California Coastal Resource Guide. Available via the internet at (http://ceres.ca.gov/ceres/calweb/coastal/waters.html). Accessed 12 December 2006.
- Christensen, N.L. 1991. Variable fire regimes on complex landscapes: Ecological consequences, policy implications and management strategies. In: Fire and the environment: Ecological and cultural perspectives. Proc. of an International Symposium, Knoxville, TN, March 22-24, 1990. USDA Forest Service Southeastern Research Station Gen. Tech. Report SE-69.
- Clements, F.E. 1916. Plant Succession: An Analysis of the Development of Vegetation. Carnegie Institution of Washington, Washington D.C.
- Clements, F.E. 1936. Nature and structure of the climax. *Journal of Ecology* 24: 252-284.
- Cochran, W.G. 1977. Sampling Techniques, 3rd ed. John Wiley, New York, 428 pp.
- Coleman, R.G., and A.R. Kruckeberg. 1999. Geology and plant life of the Klamath-Siskiyou mountain region. *Natural Areas Journal* 19: 320-340.
- Collier R., J. Dymond, J. McManus, and J. Lupton. 1990. Chemical and Physical Properties of the Water Column at Crater Lake Oregon. Pages 69-102 in E.T. Drake, G.L Larson, J. Dymond, and R. Collier, editors. Crater Lake-An Ecosystem Study: San Francisco, American Association for the Advancement of Science.
- Connell, J.H. 1978. Diversity in tropical forests and coral reefs. Science 199: 1302-1309.
- Cowles, H.C. 1899. The ecological relations of the vegetation on the sand dunes of Lake Michigan. Part I.-geographical relations of the dune floras. *Botanical Gazette* 27: 95-117.
- Cross, S.P., and D.L. Waldien. 2002. Estimation of bat community size at Oregon Caves in late-summer and early-fall 2002, Oregon Caves National Monument. Final Report. National Park Service, Cave Junction, OR.
- Currie, D.J. 1991. Energy and large scale patterns of animal- and plant- species richness. *American Naturalist* 137: 27-49.
- Dale, V.H., and S.C. Breyeler. 2001. Challenges in the development and use of ecological indicators. *Ecological Indicators* 1: 3-10.
- DeFerrari, C.M., and R.J. Naiman. 1994. A multi-scale assessment of the occurrence of exotic plants on the Olympic Peninsula, Washington. *Journal Vegetation Science* 5: 247-258.
- DellaSala, D.A., S.T. Reid, T.J. Frest, J.R. Strittholt, and D.M. Olson. 1999. A global perspective on the biodiversity of the Klamath-Siskiyou ecoregion. *Natural Areas Journal* 19: 300-319.
- Drake, E.T., G.L. Larson, J. Dymond, and R. Collier (Editors). Crater Lake: An Ecosystem Study. San Francisco: Pacific Division of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1990.

- Elzinga, C.L., D.W. Salzer, and J.W. Willoughby. 1998. Measuring & Monitoring Plant Populations. U. S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Land Management, Technical Reference 1730-1, Denver, CO.
- Erickson, J.L., and S.D. West. 2002. The influence of regional climate and nightly weather patterns of insectivorous bats. *Acta Chiropterologica* 4: 17-24.
- Flannigan, M.D., B.J. Stocks, and B.M. Wotton. 2000. Climate change and forest fires. *The Science of the Total Environment* 262: 221-229.
- Fleishman, E., G.T. Austin, and A.D. Weiss. 1998. An empirical test of Rapoport's rule: elevational gradients in montane butterfly communities. *Ecology* 79: 2482–2493.
- Franklin, J.F., and C.T. Dyrness. 1988. Natural Vegetation of Oregon and Washington. Oregon State University Press, Corvallis, OR.
- Franklin, J.F., K. Cromack, Jr., W. Denison, A. McKee, C. Maser, J. Sedell, F. Swanson, and G. Juday. 1981. Ecological characteristics of old-growth Douglas-fir forests, USDA Forest Service. Gen. Tech. Report. PNW-118, Pacific Northwest Station, Portland, OR.
- Franklin, J.F., T.A. Spies, R. Van Pelt, A.B. Carey, D.A. Thornburgh, D.R. Berge, D.B. Lindenmayer, M.E. Harmon, W.S. Keeton, D.C. Shaw, K. Bible, and J. Chen. 2002. Disturbances and structural development of natural forest ecosystems with silvicultural implications, using Douglas-fir forests as an example. *Forest Ecology and Management* 155: 399-423.
- Fujimora, T. 1977. Stem biomass and structure of a mature *Sequoia sempervirens* stand on the Pacific coast of northern California. *Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society* 59: 435-441.
- Gates, D.M. 1980. Biophysical Ecology. Dover Publications, Mineola, NY.
- Giorgi, F., B. Hewitson, J. Christensen, M. Hulme, H. Von Storch, P. Whetton, R. Jones, L. Mearns, and C. Fu. 2001. Regional climate information—evaluation and projections. In: Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P. J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson, editors. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- Gleason, H.A. 1926. The individualistic concept of the plant association. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 53: 1-20.
- Grime, J.P. 1973. Control of species diversity in herbaceous vegetation. *Journal of Environmental Management* 1: 151-167.
- Groffman, P.M., J.S. Baron, T. Blett, A.J. Gold, I. Goodman, L.H. Gunderson, B.M. Levinson, M.A. Palmer, H.W. Paerl, G.D. Peterson, N.L. Poff, D.W. Rejeski, J.F. Reynolds, M.G. Turner, K.C. Weathers, and J.A. Wiens. 2006. Ecological thresholds: the key to successful environmental management or an important concept with no practical application? *Ecosystems* 9: 1-13.

- Gross, J.G. 2003. Developing Conceptual Models for Monitoring Programs. Unpublished report on file, National Park Service, Inventory and Monitoring Program Office, Fort Collins, CO.
- Gunderson, L.H., and C.S. Holling. 2001. Panarchy: Understanding Transformations in Systems of Humans and Nature. Island Press, Covelo, CA.
- Hansen, A.J., and J.J Rotella. 1999. Abiotic factors. Pages 161-209 in M. Hunter, editor. Maintaining Biodiversity in Forest Ecosystems. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K.
- Hansen, A.J., and J.J. Rotella. 2002. Biophysical factors, land use, and species viability in and around nature reserves. *Conservation Biology* 16:1-12.
- Hobbs, R.J. 1991. Disturbance a precursor to weed invasion in native vegetation. *Plant Protection Quarterly*. 6: 99-104.
- Holling C.S., and G.K. Meffe. 1996. Command and control and the pathology of natural resource management. *Conservation Biology* 10: 328–337.
- Holling, C.S. 1973. Resilience and stability of ecological systems. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics* 4: 1-23.
- Holling, C.S. 1992. Cross-scale morphology, geometry, and dynamics of ecosystems. *Ecological Monographs* 62: 447-502.
- Hughes, R.M., E. Rexstad, and C.E. Bond. 1987. The relationship of aquatic ecoregions, river basins, and physiogeographic provinces to the ichthyogeographic regions of Oregon. *Copeia* 1987: 423-432.
- Huston, M.A. 1979. A general hypothesis of species diversity. *American Naturalist* 113: 81-101.
- Huston, M.A. 1994. Biological Diversity: The Coexistence of Species on Changing Landscapes. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- Innis, S.A., R.J. Naiman and S.R. Elliot. 2000. Indicators and assessment methods for measuring the ecological integrity of semi-aquatic terrestrial environments. *Hydrobiologia* 422: 111–131.
- IPCC. 2001. Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Houghton, J.T., Y. Ding, D.J. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.J. van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C.A. Johnson, editors. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA.
- Irigoien, X, J. Huisman, and R.P. Harris. 2004. Global biodiversity patterns of marine phytoplankton and zooplankton. *Nature* 429: 863 867.
- Jackson, W.D. 1968. Fire, air, water and earth—an elemental ecology of Tasmania. *Proceedings of the Ecological Society of Australia* 3: 9-16.

- Jenkins, K.J., A. Woodward, and E.G. Schreiner. 2003. Developing long-term ecological monitoring in Olympic National Park: A prototype model for coniferous forest parks. US Geological Survey. Information and Technology Report ITR 2003-006.
- Johnson, D.H., and T.A. O'Neil. 2001. Wildlife-habitat Relationships in Oregon and Washington. Oregon State University Press, Corvallis, OR.
- Johnson, R.K. 1998. Spatiotemporal variability of lake macroinvertebrate communities: detection of impact. *Ecological Applications* 8: 61-70.
- Karr, J.R., 1981. Assessment of biotic integrity using fish communities. *Fisheries* 6: 21–27.
- Karr, J.R., 1991. Biological integrity: a long neglected aspect of water resource management. *Ecological Applications* 1: 66–84.
- Karr, J.R., Chu, E.W. 1999. Restoring Life in Running Waters: Better Biological Monitoring. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- Keeley, J.E. 1999. Chaparral. Pages 204-253 in M.G. Barbour and W.D. Billings, editors. North American Terrestrial Vegetation, 2nd Edition. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K.
- Keeley, J.E., D. Lubin, and C.J. Fotheringham. 2003. Fire and grazing impacts on plant diversity and invasives in the southern Sierra Nevada. *Ecological Applications* 13: 1355-1374.
- Kerr, J.T., and L. Packer. 1997. Habitat heterogeneity as a determinant of mammal species richness in high-energy regions. *Nature* 385: 252-254.
- Kimberling D.N., Karr J.R, Fore L.S. 2001. Measuring human disturbance using terrestrial invertebrates in the shrub-steppe of eastern Washington (USA). *Ecological Indicators* 1: 63-81.
- King, A., J.R. King, and G.R. Geupel. 1999. Songbird monitoring in the Lassen National Forest and Lassen Volcanic National Park: Progress report of the 1998 field season. National Park Service, Unpublished Report.
- Kozloff, E.N. 1973. Seashore life of the Northern Pacific Coast: An Illustrated guide to Northern California, Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia. University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA.
- Kyriakidis, P., and A. Journel. 1999. Geostatistical space-time models: a review. *Mathematical Geology* 31: 651-684.
- Lamberti, G.A., S.V. Gregory, L.R. Ashkenas, R.C. Wildman, and K.M.S. Moore. 1991. Stream ecosystem recovery following a catastrophic debris flow. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 48: 196-208.
- Landres, P.B., P. Morgan, and F.J. Swanson. 1999. Overview of the use of natural variability concepts in managing ecological systems. *Ecological Applications* 9: 1179-1188.

- Lanner, R.M. 1996. Made for Each Other. A Symbiosis of Birds and Pines. Oxford University Press, New York, NY.
- Latham, R.E., J.E. Thompson, S.A. Riley, and A.W. Wibiralske. 1996. The Pocono till barrens: shrub savanna persisting on soils favoring forest. *Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club* 123: 330–349.
- Legendre, P., M. Dale, M.J. Fortin, J. Gurevitch, M. Hohn, and D. Myers. 2002. The consequences of spatial structure for the design and analysis of ecological field surveys. *Ecography* 25: 601–615.
- Leung, L.R., Y. Qian, X. Bian, W.M. Washington, J. Han, and J.O. Roads. 2004. Midcentury ensemble regional climate change scenarios for the western United States. *Climatic Change* 62: 75-113.
- Lindenmayer, D.B., and J.F. Franklin. 2002. Conserving Forest Biodiversity: A Comprehensive Multiscaled Approach. Island Press, Washington D.C.
- Mack, M.C., and C.M. D'Antonio. 1998. Impacts of biological invasions on disturbance regimes. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution* 13: 195-198.
- Mack, R.N., D. Simberloff, W.M. Lonsdale, H. Evans, M. Clout, and F.A. Bazzaz. 2000. Biotic invasions: causes, epidemiology, global consequences, and control. Ecological Society of America, Issues in Ecology, Technical Report. *Ecological Applications* 10: 689-670.
- Maguire, D., M. Batty, and M. Goodchild. 2005. GIS, Spatial Analysis, and Modeling. ESRI Press, Redlands, CA. 480 pp.
- Malanson, G.P. 1984. Intensity as the third factor of disturbance regime and its effect on species diversity. *Oikos* 43: 411-413.
- Manley, P.N., W.J. Zielinski, C.M. Stuart, J.J. Keane, A.J. Lind, C. Brown, B.L. Plymale, and C.O. Napper. 2000. Monitoring ecosystems in the Sierra Nevada: The conceptual model foundations. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 64: 139-152.
- Manly, B. 2001. Statistics for Environmental Science and Management. Chapman and Hall, Boca Raton, USA.
- May, C.L. and R.E. Gresswell. 2003. Processes and rates of sediment and wood accumulation in headwater streams of the Oregon Coast Range, USA. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 28: 409-424.
- McBean, E, and F. Rovers. 1998. Statistical Procedures for Analysis of Ecological Monitoring Data & Risk Assessment. Prentice Hall PTR Upper Saddle River, New Jersey. 313 pp.
- McConnaughey, B.H., and E. McConnaughey. 1985. The Audubon Society nature guides. Pacific Coast. Chanticleer Press, Inc., New York, New York.
- McDonald, T.L. 2003. Environmental Trend Detection: A Review. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*, 85: 277–292.

- McLaughlin, S.P. 1989. Natural floristic areas of the western United States. *Journal of Biogeography* 16: 239-248.
- Mead, L.S, D.R. Clayton, R.S. Naumann, D.H. Olson, and M.E. Pfrender. 2005. Newly discovered populations of salamanders from Siskiyou County California repesent a species distinct from *Plethodon stormi*. *Herpetologica* 61: 158–177.
- Meentemeyer R., D.M. Rizzo, W. Mark, and E. Lotz. 2004. Mapping the risk of establishment and spread of sudden oak death in California. *Forest Ecology and Management* 200:195-214.
- Merriam, C.H., and L. Steineger. 1890. Results of a biological survey of the San Francisco Mountain region and desert of the Little Colorado in Arizona. *North American Fauna* 3: 1–136.
- Meyer, G.A., and J.L. Pierce. 2003. Climatic controls on fire-induced sediment pulses in Yellowstone National Park and Central Idaho: a long-term perspective. *Forest Ecology and Management* 178: 89-104.
- Miller, G.R. 2002. Pacific Northwest Weather. Frank Amato Publications, Portland, OR.
- Miller, T.E. 1982. Community diversity and interactions between size and frequency of disturbance. *American Naturalist* 120: 533-536.
- Mitchell, V.L. 1976. The regionalization of climate in the Western United States. *Journal of Applied Meteorology* 15: 920-926.
- Mitsch, W.J., and J.G. Gosselink. 2000. Wetlands. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York.
- Mock, C.J. 1996. Climatic controls and spatial variations of precipitation in the Western United States. *Journal of Climate* 9: 1111-1125.
- Mohr, J.A. Mohr, C. Whitlock, and C.N. Skinner. 2000. Postglacial vegetation and fire history, eastern Klamath Mountains, California, USA. *The Holocene* 10: 587–601.
- Montgomery, D.R. 1999. Process domains and the river continuum. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 35: 397-410.
- Moore, D.R.J., P.A. Keddy, C.L. Gaudet and I.C. Wisheu. 1989. Conservation of wetlands: do infertile wetlands deserve a higher priority? *Biological Conservation* 47: 203-217.
- Moritz, M.A. and D.C. Odion. 2005. Examining the strength and possible causes of the relationship between fire history and Sudden Oak Death. *Oecologia* 144:106-114.
- Moritz, M.A. 1997. Analyzing extreme disturbance events: fire in Los Padres National Forest. *Ecological Applications* 7: 1252–1262.
- Mote, P.W. 2003. Trends in snow water equivalent in the Pacific Northwest and their climatic causes. *Geophysical Research Letters* 30: 1601-1604.
- Moyle, P.B. 1976. Inland fishes of California. University of California Press, Berkeley, Ca.

- Naiman, R.J., T.J. Beechie, L.E. Benda, D.R. Berg, P.A. Bisson, L.H. MacDonald, M.D. O'Connor, P.L. Olson, and E.A. Steel. 1992. Fundamental elements of ecologically healthy watersheds in the Pacific Northwest coastal ecoregion. Pages127-188 in Naiman, R.J., editor. Watershed management: balancing sustainability and environmental change. New York NY: Springer-Verlag.
- National Academy of Sciences. 1992. Science and the National Parks. Unpublished. Committee on Improving the Science and Technology Programs of the National Park Service Washington, D.C., National Academy Press, pp. 9-13.
- National Park Service (NPS) Air Resources Division. 2002. Air Quality in the National Parks, 2nd edition. Lakewood, CO. Available at: www2.nature.nps.gov/ard/pubs/index.htm
- National Park Service Management Policies. 2006. Chapter 4: Natural Resources. National Park Service, Washington DC.
- National Park Service. 1988. National Park Service management policies. Washington, D.C.
- National Park Service. 2004. Invasive Species Monitoring Resource website available via the internet at (http://www1.nature.nps.gov/biology/invasivespecies/). Accessed 13 December 2006.
- National Park Service. 2004a. Lava Beds National Monument, Geology Fieldnotes. Available via the internet at (http://www2.nature.nps.gov/geology/parks/labe/index.htm). Accessed 13 December 2006.
- National Park Service. 2004b. Oregon Caves National Monument, Nature and Science. Available via the internet at (http://www.nps.gov/orca/naturescience/). Accessed 13 December 2006.
- National Park Service. 2004c. Inventory and Monitoring Program. Available via the internet at (http://science.nature.nps.gov/im/monitor/index.cfm). Accessed 13 December 2006.
- Neilson, R.P., and L.H. Wullstein. 1983. Biogeography of two southwest American oaks in relation to atmospheric dynamics. *Journal of Biogeography* 10: 275-297.
- Nilsson C., G. Grelsson, M. Johansson, and U. Sperens. 1989. Patterns of plant species richness along riverbanks. *Ecology* 70: 77-84.
- Noon, B.R., T.A. Špies, and M.G Raphael. 1999. Conceptual basis for designing an effectiveness monitoring program. In: The strategy and designing of the effectiveness program for the Northwest Forest Plan. B.S. Mulder, B.R. Noon, T.A. Spies., M.G. Raphael, C.J. Palmer, A.R. Olsen, G.H. Reeves, and H.H. Welsh, Jr., editors. USDA Forest Service Gen. Tech. Report, PNW-GTR-437, Pacific Northwest Station, Portland, OR, p 21-48.
- Norris, R.M., and R.W. Webb. 1990. Geology of California, 2nd Edition, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, New York.

- Noss, R. 1990. Indicators for monitoring biodiversity: a hierarchical approach. *Conservation Biology* 4: 355-364.
- O'Connell, T.J, L.E. Jackson, and R.P. Brooks. 2000. Birds as indicators of ecological condition in the central Appalachians. *Ecological Applications* 10: 1706-1721.
- Oakley, KL., L.P. Thomas, and S.G. Fancy. 2003. Guidelines for Long-Term Monitoring Protocols. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 31: 1000-1003.
- Odion, D.C., and F.W. Davis. 2000. Fire, soil heating, and the formation of vegetation patterns in chaparral. *Ecological Monographs* 70: 149-169.
- Odion, D.C., J.R. Strittholt, H. Jiang, E.J. Frost, D.A. DellaSala, and M.A. Moritz. 2004. Fire and vegetation dynamics in the Western Klamath Mountains. Pages 71-80 in K.L. Mergenthaler, J.E. Williams, and E.S. Jules editors. Proceedings of the Second Conference on Klamath-Siskiyou Ecology. Siskiyou Field Institute, Cave Junction, Oregon.
- Ohmann, J.L., and T.A. Spies. 1998. Regional gradient analysis and spatial pattern of woody plant communities of Oregon forests. *Ecological Monographs* 68: 151-182.
- Olson, D.H. 1991. Ecological susceptibility of amphibians to population declines. Pages 55-62 in R.R. Harris, and D.C. Erman, technical coordinators. Symposium on biodiversity of northwestern California. Report 29. Wildland Research Center, University of California, Berkeley, Ca.
- Orr, E.L., Orr, W.N. 1996. Geology of the Pacific Northwest: McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. (New York, St. Louis, San Francisco, etc.).
- Orr, W.N., E.L. Orr. 1999. Geology of Oregon, 5th ed. Kendall Hunt Pub. Dubuque, IA.
- Paine R.T., Tegner M.J., Johnson E.A. 1998. Compounded perturbations yield ecological surprises. *Ecosystems* 1:535–545.
- Parker V.T., and C. Rogers. 1988. Chaparral burns and management: influence of soil moisture at the time of a prescribed chaparral burn on the response of the native vegetation from the seed bank. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.
- Parmesan, C. 2006. Ecological and evolutionary responses to recent climate change. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics* 37: 637–669.
- Parmesan, C., and G. Yohe. 2003. A globally coherent fingerprint of climate change impacts across natural systems. *Nature* 421: 37-42.
- Parrish, J.D., D.P. Braun, and R.S. Unnash. 2003. Are we conserving what we say we are: measuring ecological integrity within protected areas. *BioScience* 53: 851-860.
- Paysen, T.E., and J.D. Cohen. 1990. Chamise chaparral dead fuel fraction is not reliably predicted by age. *Western Journal of Applied Forestry* 5: 127-131.
- Perry, D.A. 1994. Forest Ecosystems. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, MD.

- Peterson, G.D. 2002. Contagious disturbances, ecological memory, and the emergence of landscape pattern. *Ecosystems* 5: 329-338.
- Petraitis, P.S. 1987. Factors organizing rocky intertidal communities of New England: herbivory and predation in sheltered bays. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 109: 117–136.
- Petraitis, P.S., R.E. Latham, and R.A. Niesenbaum, 1989. The maintenance of species diversity by disturbance. *Quarterly Review of Biology* 64: 393-418.
- Pickett, S.T.A., and P.S. White. 1985. The ecology of natural disturbance and patch dynamics. Academic Press, Orlando, FL.
- Poff, N.L., Allan, J.D., Bain, M.B., Karr, J.R., Prestegaard, K.L., Richter, B.D., Sparks, R.E., and J.C. Stromberg. 1997. The natural flow regime: a paradigm for river conservation and restoration. *BioScience* 47: 769-784.
- Pyle, R.M. 2002. The Butterflies of Cascadia: A Guide to all the Species of Washington, Oregon, and Surrounding territories. Seattle Audubon Society, Seattle, WA.
- Redmond, K.T. 1990. Crater Lake climate and lake level variability. Pages 127-142 in E.T. Drake, G.L Larson, J. Dymond, and C. Robert, editors. Crater Lake-An ecosystem study: San Francisco, American Association for the Advancement of Science.
- Reeves, G.H., LE. Benda, K.M. Burnett, P.A. Bisson, and J.R. Sedell. 1995. A disturbance-based ecosystem approach to maintaining and restoring freshwater habitats of evolutionarily significant units of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest. *American Fisheries Society Symposium* 17: 334-349.
- Rejmanek, M. 1989. Invasibility of plant communities. Pages 369-388 in J.A. Drake, H.A. Mooney, F. DiCastri, R.H. Groves, F.J. Kruger, M. Rejmanek and M. Williamson, editors. Biological Invasions: a Global Perspective. Wiley, Chichester, UK.
- Richter, D. 1998. Territory occupancy, nest site use, and reproductive success of goshawks on private and public timberlands: 1998 progress report to the California Department of Fish and Game. Unpublished report, California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.
- Ricketts, E.F., and J. Calvin. 1939. Between Pacific Tides. 4th Ed. Stanford Univ. Press, Stanford, CA.
- Roberts, M.R., and F.S. Gilliam. 1995. Patterns and mechanisms of plant diversity in forested ecosystems: implications for forest management. *Ecological Applications* 5: 969-977.
- Root, T. 1988. Energy constraints on avian distributions and abundances. *Ecology* 69: 330–339.
- Rosenzweig, M. 1995. Species Diversity in Space and Time. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

- Roth, J.L. 2000. Why so Many Siskiyou Plants? Crater Lake Nature Notes 31: 17-31.
- Royo, A.R. 2004. Desert USA, Caves of the North American Deserts. Available via the internet at (http://www.desertusa.com/mag99/feb/stories/caves.html). Accessed 13 December 2006.
- Runkle, J. R. 1985. Disturbance regimes in temperate forests. Pages 17-34 in S.T.A. Pickett, and P.S. White, editors. The Ecology of Natural Disturbance and Patch Dynamics. Academic Press, NY.
- Sarr, D.A., D.E. Hibbs, and M.A. Huston. 2005. A hierarchical perspective of plant diversity. *Quarterly Review of Biology* 80: 187-212.
- Sarr, D.A., D.C. Odion, D.E. Hibbs, J. Weikel, R.E. Gresswell, R.B. Bury, N.M. Czarnomski, R.J. Pabst, J. Shatford, and A.R. Moldenke. 2005. Riparian Zone Forest Management and the Protection of Biodiversity, a Problem Analysis. National Center for Air and Stream Improvement, Technical Bulletin No. 908. Research Triangle Park, North Carolina.
- Sawyer J.O., S.C. Sillett, J.H. Popenoe, A. LaBanca, T. Sholars, D.L. Largent, F. Euphrat, R.F. Noss, and R. Van Pelt . 2000. Characteristics of Redwood Forests. Pages 39-79 in Noss RF, editor. The Redwood Forest. Island Press, Washington, DC.
- Scheffer, M., S. Carpenter, J.A. Foley, C. Folk, and B. Walker. 2001. Catastrophic shifts in ecosystems. *Nature* 413: 591-596.
- Sellars, R.W. 1997. Preserving Nature in the National Parks: a History. Yale University Press, New Haven and London.
- Shea, K., S.H. Roxburgh, and E.S.J. Rauschert. 2004. Moving from pattern to process: coexistence mechanisms under intermediate disturbance regimes. *Ecology Letters*. 7: 491-508.
- Shine, R., E.G. Barrott, and M.J. Elphick. 2002. Some like it hot: effects of forest clearing on nest temperatures of montane reptiles. *Ecology* 83: 2808–2815.
- Smith, T., and M. Huston. 1989. A theory of the spatial and temporal dynamics of plant communities. *Vegetatio* 83: 49-69.
- Smith, J.P., and J.O. Sawyer, Jr. 1988. Endemic vascular plants of northwestern California and southwest Oregon. *Madroño* 35: 54-69.
- Snyder, J.O. 1907. The fishes of the coastal streams of Oregon and northern California. *Bulletin U.S. Bureau of Fisheries* 27: 155-189.
- Snyder, M.A., L.C. Sloan, N.S. Diffenbaugh, and J.L. Bell. 2003. Future climate change and upwelling in the California Current. *Geophysical Research Letters* 30: 1823-1826.
- Sousa, W.P. 1979. Disturbance in marine intertidal boulder fields: the nonequilibrium maintenance of species diversity. *Ecology* 60:1225-1239.

- Spies, T.A., J.F. Franklin, and M. Klopsch. 1990. Canopy gaps in Douglas-fir forests of the Cascade Mountains. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 20: 649-658.
- Spies, T.P., and M.G. Turner. 1999. Dynamic forest mosaics. Pages 95-160 in: M.L. Hunter, Jr., editor. Maintaining Biodiversity in Forest Ecosystems. Cambridge University Press, NY.
- Stebbins, G.L., and J. Major. 1965. Endemism and speciation in the California flora. *Ecological Monographs* 35: 1-35.
- Stephenson, N.L., D.J. Parsons, and T.W. Swetnam. 1991. Restoring natural fire the the Sequoia-Mixed conifer forest: should intense fire play a role? Pages 321-338 in Proceedings of the 17th Tall Timbers Fire Ecology Conference, May, 1989, Tallahassee, FL.
- Stevens, D.L., and A.R. Olsen. 2004. Spatially balanced sampling of natural resources. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 99: 262–278.
- Stewart, I.T., D.R. Cayan, M.D. Dettinger. 2004. Changes in snowmelt runoff timing in western North America under a 'business as usual' climate change scenario. *Climatic Change* 62: 217-232.
- Stinton, D.S., J.A. Jones, J.L. Ohmann, and F.J. Swanson. 2000. Windthrow disturbance, forest composition, and structure in the Bull Run Basin, Oregon. *Ecology* 81: 2539-2556.
- Strong, D.H. 1973. Footprints in time: a history of Lassen Volcanic National Park. W.L. Walker, Red Bluff, California.
- Sullivan, T.J., D.L. Peterson, C.L. Blanchard, and S.J. Tanenbaum. 2001. Assessment of Air Quality and Air Pollution Impacts in Class I National Parks of California. Cooperative agreement number 400-7-9002 between NPS and U. of Virginia. Available from the National I&M Program, Fort Collins, CO.
- Swetnam, T.W., C.D. Allen, and J.L. Betancourt. 1999. Applied historical ecology: using the past to manage for the future. *Ecological Applications* 9: 1189-1206.
- Tomback, D.F. 1982. Dispersal of whitebark pine by Clark's Nutcrackers: a mutualism hypothesis. Journal of Animal Ecology 51: 451-467.
- Turner, M.G., W.W. Hargrove, R.H. Gardner, and W.H. Romme. 1994. Effects of f ire on landscape heterogeneity in Yellowstone National Park. *Journal of Vegetation Science* 5: 731-742.
- Vannote, R.L., G.W. Minshall, K.W. Cummins, J.R. Sedell, and C.E. Cushing. 1980. The river continuum concept. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 37: 130-137.
- Verts, B.J., and L.N. Carraway. 1998. Land Mammals of Oregon. University of California Press, Berkeley, CA.
- Walker, R.B. 1954. The ecology of serpentine soils. *Ecology* 35: 259-266.

- Wallace, D.R. 1983. The Klamath Knot. Sierra Club Books, San Francisco, CA.
- Walter, H. 1973. Vegetation of the Earth in Relation to the Eco-Physiological Conditions. Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Walters, C.J., and C.S. Holling. 1990. Large-scale management experiments and learning by doing. *Ecology* 71: 060-2068.
- Waring, R.H. 1969. Forest plants of the eastern Siskiyous: their environmental and vegetational distribution. *Northwest Science* 43: 1-17.
- Waring, R.H., W.H. Emmingham, H.L. Gholz, and C.C. Grier. 1978. Variation in maximum leaf area of coniferous forests in Oregon and its ecological significance. *Forest Science* 24: 131-140.
- Weisberg, P.J. and F.J. Swanson. 2003. Regional synchroneity in fire regimes of western Oregon and Washington, U.S.A. *Forest Ecology and Management* 172: 17-28.
- Whitaker, J.O. Jr., C. Maser, and L.E. Keller. 1977. Food habits of bats of western Oregon. *Northwest Science* 51: 46-55.
- White, D., Geographer USEPA, Corvallis, OR. Personal communication, June 2004.
- Whitlock, C., and P.J. Bartlein. 1997. Vegetation and climate change in Northwest America during the past 125 k yr. *Nature* 388: 59-61.
- Whitlock, C., S.L. Shafer, J. Marlon. 2003. The role of vegetation change in shaping past and future fire regimes in the northwest U.S. and the implications for ecosystem Management. *Forest Ecology and Management* 178: 5-21.
- Whittaker, R.H. 1967. Gradient analysis of vegetation. Biological Review 42: 207-264.
- Whittaker, R.H. 1956. Vegetation of the Great Smoky Mountains. *Ecological Monographs*. 26: 1–80.
- Whittaker, R.H. 1960. Vegetation of the Siskiyou Mountains, Oregon and California. *Ecological Monographs* 30: 279–338.
- Whittaker, R.H. 1961. Vegetation history of the Pacific coast states and the central significance of the Klamath region. *Madroño* 16: 5-23.
- Whittaker, R.H. 1965. Dominance and diversity in land plant communities. *Science* 147: 250-259.
- Whittaker, R.H. 1975. Communities and Ecosystems. MacMillan, New York, New York, 385 pp.
- Whittaker, R.J. Willis, K.J., and R. Field. 2001. Scale and species richness: towards a general, hierarchical theory of species diversity. *Journal of Biogeography* 28: 453-470.
- Wiens, J.A. 1989. Spatial scaling in ecology. Functional Ecology 3: 385-397.

- Willis, K.S., and H.J.B. Birks. 2006. What is natural? The need for a long-term perspective in biodiversity conservation. *Science* 314: 1261-1265.
- With, K. 2002. The landscape ecology of invasive spread. *Conservation Biology* 16: 1192-1203.
- Woodward, F.I. 1987. Climate and Plant Distribution. Cambridge University Press, London.
- Wright, R.G. 1999. Wildlife management in the national parks: questions in search of answers. *Ecological Applications* 9: 30-36.
- Wu, J., Loucks, O.L., 1995. From balance of nature to hierarchical patch dynamics, a paradigm shift in ecology. *Quarterly Review of Biology* 70: 439-466.
- York, F.F., and D. Deur. 2002. Huckleberry Mountain Traditional-Use Study-Final Report. Unpublished report on file, Crater Lake National Park.
- Zedler, P.H., C.R. Gautier, and G.S. McMaster. 1983. Vegetation change in response to extreme events: the effect of a short interval between fires in California chaparral and coastal scrub. *Ecology* 64: 809-818.
- Zeiner, D.C, W.F. Laudenslayer, Jr., K.E. Mayer, and M. White, editors. 1990. California Wildlife Habitat Relationships System. Mammals. Volume 3.
- Zika, P.F. 2003. A Crater Lake National Park Vascular Plant Checklist. Crater Lake Natural History Association, Crater Lake, Oregon. 92 pp.

List of Appendices

- Appendix A. Park natural resource profiles.
- Appendix B. NPS policies and mandates linking park monitoring and management.
- Appendix C. Dominant vegetation types of the Klamath Region.
- Appendix D. Summary of current information on fire regimes in the Klamath Region.
- Appendix E: Rare habitats and species of the Klamath Network.
- Appendix F. Klamath Network water quality report: Phase III
- Appendix G. Vital signs scoping process and key findings, Klamath Network.
- Appendix H. Air resource monitoring issues in the Klamath Network.
- Appendix I. Non-native species threats in the Klamath Network.
- Appendix J. Existing monitoring programs in the Klamath Region.
- Appendix K. Glossary of key terms and concepts.
- Appendix L. Final quantitative ranking of 172 vital signs.
- Appendix M. Ranking comments from 44 respondents.
- Appendix N. Candidate vital signs comments.
- Appendix O. Protocol development summaries.
- Appendix P. Klamath Network data management plan, draft.



The U.S. Department of the Interior (DOI) is the nation's principal conservation agency, charged with the mission "to protect and provide access to our Nation's natural and cultural heritage and honor our trust responsibilities to Indian tribes and our commitments to island communities." More specifically, Interior protects America's treasures for future generations, provides access to our nation's natural and cultural heritage, offers recreation opportunities, honors its trust responsibilities to American Indians and Alaska Natives and its responsibilities to island communities, conducts scientific research, provides wise stewardship of energy and mineral resources, fosters sound use of land and water resources, and conserves and protects fish and wildlife. The work that we do affects the lives of millions of people; from the family taking a vacation in one of our national parks to the children studying in one of our Indian schools.

NPS D-XXX, Month Year

National Park Service U.S. Department of the Interior





EXPERIENCE YOUR AMERICA $^{\mathrm{T}}$

